

---

**galois**

**Matt Hostetter**

**Sep 09, 2021**



# CONTENTS

<b>1 Installation</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Install with pip . . . . .	3
<b>2 Basic Usage</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1 Class construction . . . . .	5
2.2 Array creation . . . . .	6
2.3 Field arithmetic . . . . .	8
2.4 Linear algebra . . . . .	8
2.5 Numpy ufunc methods . . . . .	9
2.6 Numpy functions . . . . .	10
2.7 Polynomial construction . . . . .	10
2.8 Polynomial arithmetic . . . . .	11
<b>3 Tutorials</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1 Intro to Galois Fields: Prime Fields . . . . .	13
3.2 Intro to Galois Fields: Extension Fields . . . . .	19
3.3 Constructing Galois field array classes . . . . .	31
3.4 Array creation . . . . .	32
3.5 Galois field array arithmetic . . . . .	36
3.6 Extremely large fields . . . . .	39
<b>4 Performance Testing</b>	<b>41</b>
4.1 Performance compared with native numpy . . . . .	41
<b>5 Development</b>	<b>49</b>
5.1 Install for development . . . . .	49
5.2 Install for development with min dependencies . . . . .	49
5.3 Lint the package . . . . .	50
5.4 Run the unit tests . . . . .	50
5.5 Build the documentation . . . . .	50
<b>6 API Reference v0.0.17</b>	<b>53</b>
6.1 galois . . . . .	53
6.2 numpy . . . . .	151
<b>7 Release Notes</b>	<b>153</b>
7.1 v0.0.17 . . . . .	153
7.2 v0.0.16 . . . . .	154
7.3 v0.0.15 . . . . .	154
7.4 v0.0.14 . . . . .	155

**8 Indices and tables** **157**

**Index** **159**

*Ask Jacobi or Gauss publicly to give their opinion, not as to the truth, but as to the importance of these theorems. Later there will be, I hope, some people who will find it to their advantage to decipher all this mess.* – Évariste Galois, two days before his death



Fig. 1: Évariste Galois, image credit



---

CHAPTER  
ONE

---

## INSTALLATION

### 1.1 Install with pip

The latest version of `galois` can be installed from PyPI using `pip`.

```
$ python3 -m pip install galois
```

---

**Note:** Fun fact: read [here](#) from python core developer Brett Cannon about why it's better to install using `python3 -m pip` rather than `pip3`.

---



---

## CHAPTER TWO

---

### BASIC USAGE

The main idea of the `galois` package can be summarized as follows. The user creates a “Galois field array class” using `GF = galois.GF(p**m)`. A Galois field array class `GF` is a subclass of `numpy.ndarray` and its constructor `x = GF(array_like)` mimics the call signature of `numpy.array()`. A Galois field array `x` is operated on like any other numpy array, but all arithmetic is performed in  $GF(p^m)$  not  $\mathbb{Z}$  or  $\mathbb{R}$ .

Internally, the Galois field arithmetic is implemented by replacing `numpy ufuncs`. The new ufuncs are written in python and then `just-in-time compiled` with `numba`. The ufuncs can be configured to use either lookup tables (for speed) or explicit calculation (for memory savings). Numba also provides the ability to “target” the JIT-compiled ufuncs for CPUs or GPUs.

In addition to normal array arithmetic, `galois` also supports linear algebra (with `numpy.linalg` functions) and polynomials over Galois fields (with the `galois.Poly` class).

## 2.1 Class construction

Galois field array classes are created using the `galois.GF()` class factory function.

```
In [1]: import numpy as np
In [2]: import galois
In [3]: GF256 = galois.GF(2**8)
In [4]: print(GF256)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2^8)'>
```

These classes are subclasses of `galois.FieldArray` (which itself subclasses `numpy.ndarray`) and have `galois.FieldClass` as their metaclass.

```
In [5]: isinstance(GF256, galois.FieldClass)
Out[5]: True
In [6]: issubclass(GF256, galois.FieldArray)
Out[6]: True
In [7]: issubclass(GF256, np.ndarray)
Out[7]: True
```

A Galois field array class contains attributes relating to its Galois field and methods to modify how the field is calculated or displayed. See the attributes and methods in `galois.FieldClass`.

```
# Summarizes some properties of the Galois field
In [8]: print(GF256.properties)
GF(2^8):
  characteristic: 2
  degree: 8
  order: 256
  irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
  is_primitive_poly: True
  primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^8)

# Access each attribute individually
In [9]: GF256.irreducible_poly
Out[9]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
```

The `galois` package even supports arbitrarily-large fields! This is accomplished by using numpy arrays with `dtype=object` and pure-python ufuncs. This comes at a performance penalty compared to smaller fields which use numpy integer dtypes (e.g., `numpy.uint32`) and have compiled ufuncs.

```
In [10]: GF = galois.GF(36893488147419103183); print(GF.properties)
GF(36893488147419103183):
  characteristic: 36893488147419103183
  degree: 1
  order: 36893488147419103183

In [11]: GF = galois.GF(2**100); print(GF.properties)
GF(2^100):
  characteristic: 2
  degree: 100
  order: 1267650600228229401496703205376
  irreducible_poly: Poly(x^100 + x^57 + x^56 + x^55 + x^52 + x^48 + x^47 + x^46 + x^45 + x^44 + x^43 + x^41 + x^37 + x^36 + x^35 + x^34 + x^31 + x^30 + x^27 + x^25 + x^24 + x^22 + x^20 + x^19 + x^16 + x^15 + x^11 + x^9 + x^8 + x^6 + x^5 + x^3 + 1, GF(2))
  is_primitive_poly: True
  primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^100)
```

## 2.2 Array creation

Galois field arrays can be created from existing numpy arrays.

```
# Represents an existing numpy array
In [12]: array = np.random.randint(0, GF256.order, 10, dtype=int); array
Out[12]: array([238, 15, 218, 181, 80, 20, 111, 33, 166, 235])

# Explicit Galois field array creation (a copy is performed)
In [13]: GF256(array)
Out[13]: GF([238, 15, 218, 181, 80, 20, 111, 33, 166, 235], order=2^8)

# Or view an existing numpy array as a Galois field array (no copy is performed)
In [14]: array.view(GF256)
Out[14]: GF([238, 15, 218, 181, 80, 20, 111, 33, 166, 235], order=2^8)
```

Or they can be created from “array-like” objects. These include strings representing a Galois field element as a polynomial over its prime subfield.

```
# Arrays can be specified as iterables of iterables
In [15]: GF256([[217, 130, 42], [74, 208, 113]])
Out[15]:
GF([[217, 130, 42],
    [74, 208, 113]], order=2^8)

# You can mix-and-match polynomial strings and integers
In [16]: GF256(["x^6 + 1", 2, "1", "x^5 + x^4 + x"])
Out[16]: GF([65, 2, 1, 50], order=2^8)

# Single field elements are 0-dimensional arrays
In [17]: GF256("x^6 + x^4 + 1")
Out[17]: GF(81, order=2^8)
```

Galois field arrays also have constructor class methods for convenience. They include:

- `galois.FieldArray.Zeros()`, `galois.FieldArray.Ones()`, `galois.FieldArray.Identity()`, `galois.FieldArray.Range()`, `galois.FieldArray.Random()`, `galois.FieldArray.Elements()`

Galois field elements can either be displayed using their integer representation, polynomial representation, or power representation. Calling `galois.FieldClass.display()` will change the element representation. If called as a context manager, the display mode will only be temporarily changed.

```
In [18]: x = GF256(["y**6 + 1", 0, 2, "1", "y**5 + y**4 + y"]); x
Out[18]: GF([65, 0, 2, 1, 50], order=2^8)

# Set the display mode to represent GF(2^8) field elements as polynomials over GF(2)
# with degree less than 8
In [19]: GF256.display("poly");

In [20]: x
Out[20]: GF([^6 + 1, 0, , 1, ^5 + ^4 + ], order=2^8)

# Temporarily set the display mode to represent GF(2^8) field elements as powers of the
# primitive element
In [21]: with GF256.display("power"):
....:     print(x)
....:
GF([^191, 0, , 1, ^194], order=2^8)

# Resets the display mode to the integer representation
In [22]: GF256.display();
```

## 2.3 Field arithmetic

Galois field arrays are treated like any other numpy array. Array arithmetic is performed using python operators or numpy functions.

In the list below, GF is a Galois field array class created by `GF = galois.GF(p**m)`, x and y are GF arrays, and z is an integer `numpy.ndarray`. All arithmetic operations follow normal numpy broadcasting rules.

- Addition: `x + y == np.add(x, y)`
- Subtraction: `x - y == np.subtract(x, y)`
- Multiplication: `x * y == np.multiply(x, y)`
- Division: `x / y == x // y == np.divide(x, y)`
- Scalar multiplication: `x * z == np.multiply(x, z)`, e.g. `x * 3 == x + x + x`
- Additive inverse: `-x == np.negative(x)`
- Multiplicative inverse: `GF(1) / x == np.reciprocal(x)`
- Exponentiation: `x ** z == np.power(x, z)`, e.g. `x ** 3 == x * x * x`
- Logarithm: `np.log(x)`, e.g. `GF.primitive_element ** np.log(x) == x`
- **COMING SOON:** Logarithm base b: `GF.log(x, b)`, where b is any field element
- Matrix multiplication: `A @ B == np.matmul(A, B)`

**In [23]:** `x = GF256.Random((2,5)); x`

**Out[23]:**

```
GF([[ 22, 101, 170, 78, 86],
    [101, 201, 101, 10, 176]], order=2^8)
```

**In [24]:** `y = GF256.Random(5); y`

**Out[24]:** `GF([ 88, 23, 31, 97, 140], order=2^8)`

# y is broadcast over the last dimension of x

**In [25]:** `x + y`

**Out[25]:**

```
GF([[ 78, 114, 181, 47, 218],
    [ 61, 222, 122, 107, 60]], order=2^8)
```

## 2.4 Linear algebra

The `galois` package intercepts relevant calls to numpy's linear algebra functions and performs the specified operation in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  not in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Some of these functions include:

- `np.dot()`, `np.vdot()`, `np.inner()`, `np.outer()`, `np.matmul()`, `np.linalg.matrix_power()`
- `np.linalg.det()`, `np.linalg.matrix_rank()`, `np.trace()`
- `np.linalg.solve()`, `np.linalg.inv()`

**In [26]:** `A = GF256.Random((3,3)); A`

**Out[26]:**

```
GF([[237, 10, 163],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[ 73, 150, 102],
[ 35, 242, 13]], order=2^8)

# Ensure A is invertible
In [27]: while np.linalg.matrix_rank(A) < 3:
....:     A = GF256.Random(3,3); A
....:

In [28]: b = GF256.Random(3); b
Out[28]: GF([240, 14, 77], order=2^8)

In [29]: x = np.linalg.solve(A, b); x
Out[29]: GF([ 1, 216, 201], order=2^8)

In [30]: np.array_equal(A @ x, b)
Out[30]: True
```

Galois field arrays also contain matrix decomposition routines not included in numpy. These include:

- galois.FieldArray.row\_reduce(), galois.FieldArray.lu\_decompose(), galois.FieldArray.lup\_decompose()

## 2.5 Numpy ufunc methods

Galois field arrays support [numpy ufunc methods](#). This allows the user to apply a ufunc in a unique way across the target array. The ufunc method signature is `<ufunc>.method(*args, **kwargs)`. All arithmetic ufuncs are supported. Below is a list of their ufunc methods.

- `<method>`: `reduce`, `accumulate`, `reduceat`, `outer`, `at`

```
In [31]: X = GF256.Random((2,5)); X
Out[31]:
GF([[169, 21, 75, 157, 61],
 [24, 224, 175, 38, 2]], order=2^8)

In [32]: np.multiply.reduce(X, axis=0)
Out[32]: GF([ 99, 225, 117, 35, 122], order=2^8)
```

```
In [33]: x = GF256.Random(5); x
Out[33]: GF([ 9, 147, 138, 131, 111], order=2^8)

In [34]: y = GF256.Random(5); y
Out[34]: GF([ 40, 205, 166, 63, 75], order=2^8)

In [35]: np.multiply.outer(x, y)
Out[35]:
GF([[117, 235, 255, 218, 41],
 [123, 92, 188, 96, 119],
 [180, 251, 241, 109, 154],
 [193, 16, 14, 183, 179],
 [62, 202, 135, 144, 44]], order=2^8)
```

## 2.6 Numpy functions

Many other relevant numpy functions are supported on Galois field arrays. These include:

- `np.copy()`, `np.concatenate()`, `np.insert()`, `np.reshape()`

## 2.7 Polynomial construction

The `galois` package supports polynomials over Galois fields with the `galois.Poly` class. `galois.Poly` does not subclass `numpy.ndarray` but instead contains a `galois.FieldArray` of coefficients as an attribute (implements the “has-a”, not “is-a”, architecture).

Polynomials can be created by specifying the polynomial coefficients as either a `galois.FieldArray` or an “array-like” object with the `field` keyword argument.

```
In [36]: p = galois.Poly([172, 22, 0, 0, 225], field=GF256); p
Out[36]: Poly(172x^4 + 22x^3 + 225, GF(2^8))

In [37]: coeffs = GF256([33, 17, 0, 225]); coeffs
Out[37]: GF([ 33,   17,     0, 225], order=2^8)

In [38]: p = galois.Poly(coeffs, order="asc"); p
Out[38]: Poly(225x^3 + 17x + 33, GF(2^8))
```

Polynomials over Galois fields can also display the field elements as polynomials over their prime subfields. This can be quite confusing to read, so be warned!

```
In [39]: print(p)
Poly(225x^3 + 17x + 33, GF(2^8))

In [40]: with GF256.display("poly"):
....:     print(p)
....:
Poly((^7 + ^6 + ^5 + 1)x^3 + (^4 + 1)x + (^5 + 1), GF(2^8))
```

Polynomials can also be created using a number of constructor class methods. They include:

- `galois.Poly.Zero()`, `galois.Poly.One()`, `galois.Poly.Identity()`, `galois.Poly.Random()`,  
`galois.Poly.Integer()`, `galois.Poly.String()`, `galois.Poly.Degrees()`, `galois.Poly.Roots()`

```
# Construct a polynomial by specifying its roots
In [41]: q = galois.Poly.Roots([155, 37], field=GF256); q
Out[41]: Poly(x^2 + 190x + 71, GF(2^8))

In [42]: q.roots()
Out[42]: GF([- 37, 155], order=2^8)
```

## 2.8 Polynomial arithmetic

Polynomial arithmetic is performed using python operators.

```
In [43]: p
Out[43]: Poly(225x^3 + 17x + 33, GF(2^8))

In [44]: q
Out[44]: Poly(x^2 + 190x + 71, GF(2^8))

In [45]: p + q
Out[45]: Poly(225x^3 + x^2 + 175x + 102, GF(2^8))

In [46]: divmod(p, q)
Out[46]: (Poly(225x + 57, GF(2^8)), Poly(56x + 104, GF(2^8)))

In [47]: p ** 2
Out[47]: Poly(171x^6 + 28x^2 + 117, GF(2^8))
```

Polynomials over Galois fields can be evaluated at scalars or arrays of field elements.

```
In [48]: p = galois.Poly.Degrees([4, 3, 0], [172, 22, 225], field=GF256); p
Out[48]: Poly(172x^4 + 22x^3 + 225, GF(2^8))

# Evaluate the polynomial at a single value
In [49]: p(1)
Out[49]: GF(91, order=2^8)

In [50]: x = GF256.Random((2,5)); x
Out[50]:
GF([[118, 126, 242, 123, 177],
    [181, 41, 143, 115, 36]], order=2^8)

# Evaluate the polynomial at an array of values
In [51]: p(x)
Out[51]:
GF([[136, 208, 234, 92, 1],
    [235, 65, 211, 17, 84]], order=2^8)
```

Polynomials can also be evaluated in superfields. For example, evaluating a Galois field's irreducible polynomial at one of its elements.

```
# Notice the irreducible polynomial is over GF(2), not GF(2^8)
In [52]: p = GF256.irreducible_poly; p
Out[52]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [53]: GF256.is_primitive_poly
Out[53]: True

# Notice the primitive element is in GF(2^8)
In [54]: alpha = GF256.primitive_element; alpha
Out[54]: GF(2, order=2^8)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Since p(x) is a primitive polynomial, alpha is one of its roots
In [55]: p(alpha, field=GF256)
Out[55]: GF(0, order=2^8)
```

## 3.1 Intro to Galois Fields: Prime Fields

A Galois field is a finite field named in honor of Évariste Galois, one of the fathers of group theory. A *field* is a set that is closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. To be *closed* under an operation means that performing the operation on any two elements of the set will result in a third element from the set. A *finite field* is a field with a finite set.

Galois proved that finite fields exist only when their *order* (or size of the set) is a prime power  $p^m$ . Accordingly, finite fields can be broken into two categories: prime fields  $\text{GF}(p)$  and extension fields  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . This tutorial will focus on prime fields.

### 3.1.1 Elements

The elements of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p)$  are naturally represented as the integers  $\{0, 1, \dots, p - 1\}$ .

Using the `galois` package, a Galois field array class is created using the class factory `galois.GF()`.

```
In [1]: GF7 = galois.GF(7); GF7
Out[1]: <class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>

In [2]: print(GF7.properties)
GF(7):
    characteristic: 7
    degree: 1
    order: 7
```

The elements of the Galois field can be represented as a 1-dimensional array using the `galois.FieldArray.Elements()` method.

```
In [3]: GF7.Elements()
Out[3]: GF([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6], order=7)
```

This array should be read as “a Galois field array  $[0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]$  over the finite field with order 7”.

### 3.1.2 Arithmetic mod p

Addition, subtraction, and multiplication in  $\text{GF}(p)$  is equivalent to integer addition, subtraction, and multiplication reduced modulo  $p$ . Mathematically speaking, this is the ring of integers mod  $p$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

With `galois`, we can represent a single Galois field element using `GF7(int)`. For example, `GF7(3)` to represent the field element 3. We can see that  $3 + 5 \equiv 1 \pmod{7}$ , so accordingly  $3 + 5 = 1$  in  $\text{GF}(7)$ . The same can be shown for subtraction and multiplication.

```
In [4]: GF7(3) + GF7(5)
```

```
Out[4]: GF(1, order=7)
```

```
In [5]: GF7(3) - GF7(5)
```

```
Out[5]: GF(5, order=7)
```

```
In [6]: GF7(3) * GF7(5)
```

```
Out[6]: GF(1, order=7)
```

The power of `galois`, however, is array arithmetic not scalar arithmetic. Random arrays over  $\text{GF}(7)$  can be created using `galois.FieldArray.Random()`. Normal binary operators work on Galois field arrays just like numpy arrays.

```
In [7]: x = GF7.Random(10); x
```

```
Out[7]: GF([0, 3, 2, 0, 5, 5, 0, 6, 3, 3], order=7)
```

```
In [8]: y = GF7.Random(10); y
```

```
Out[8]: GF([3, 4, 1, 0, 4, 3, 4, 5, 1, 2], order=7)
```

```
In [9]: x + y
```

```
Out[9]: GF([3, 0, 3, 0, 2, 1, 4, 4, 4, 5], order=7)
```

```
In [10]: x - y
```

```
Out[10]: GF([4, 6, 1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 1, 2, 1], order=7)
```

```
In [11]: x * y
```

```
Out[11]: GF([0, 5, 2, 0, 6, 1, 0, 2, 3, 6], order=7)
```

The `galois` package includes the ability to display the arithmetic tables for a given finite field. The table is only readable for small fields, but nonetheless the capability is provided. Select a few computations at random and convince yourself the answers are correct.

```
In [12]: print(GF7.arithmetic_table("+"))
```

x + y	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	0
2	2	3	4	5	6	0	1
3	3	4	5	6	0	1	2
4	4	5	6	0	1	2	3

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

5	5		6		0		1		2		3		4
6	6		0		1		2		3		4		5

**In [13]:** `print(GF7.arithmetic_table("-"))`

x - y	0		1		2		3		4		5		6
0	0		6		5		4		3		2		1
1	1		0		6		5		4		3		2
2	2		1		0		6		5		4		3
3	3		2		1		0		6		5		4
4	4		3		2		1		0		6		5
5	5		4		3		2		1		0		6
6	6		5		4		3		2		1		0

**In [14]:** `print(GF7.arithmetic_table("*"))`

x * y	0		1		2		3		4		5		6
0	0		0		0		0		0		0		0
1	0		1		2		3		4		5		6
2	0		2		4		6		1		3		5
3	0		3		6		2		5		1		4
4	0		4		1		5		2		6		3
5	0		5		3		1		6		4		2
6	0		6		5		4		3		2		1

Division in  $\text{GF}(p)$  is a little more difficult. Division can't be as simple as taking  $x/y \pmod p$  because many integer divisions do not result in integers. The division of  $x/y = z$  can be reformulated as the question "what  $z$  multiplied by  $y$  results in  $x$ ?". This is an equivalent problem to "what  $z$  multiplied by  $y$  results in 1?", where  $z$  is the multiplicative inverse of  $y$ .

To find the multiplicative inverse of  $y$ , one can simply perform trial multiplication until the result of 1 is found. For instance, suppose  $y = 4$  in  $\text{GF}(7)$ . We can multiply 4 by every element in the field until the product is 1 and we'll find that  $4^{-1} = 2$  in  $\text{GF}(7)$ , namely  $2 * 4 = 1$  in  $\text{GF}(7)$ .

```
In [15]: y = GF7(4); y
Out[15]: GF(4, order=7)

# Hypothesize each element from GF(7)
In [16]: guesses = GF7.Elements(); guesses
Out[16]: GF([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6], order=7)

In [17]: results = y * guesses; results
Out[17]: GF([0, 4, 1, 5, 2, 6, 3], order=7)

In [18]: y_inv = guesses[np.where(results == 1)[0][0]]; y_inv
Out[18]: GF(2, order=7)
```

This algorithm is terribly inefficient for large fields, however. Fortunately, Euclid came up with an efficient algorithm, now called the Extended Euclidean Algorithm. Given two integers  $a$  and  $b$ , the Extended Euclidean Algorithm finds the integers  $x$  and  $y$  such that  $xa + yb = \gcd(a, b)$ . This algorithm is implemented in `galois.gcd()`.

If  $a$  is a field element of GF(7) and  $b = 7$ , then  $x = a^{-1}$  in GF(7). Note, the GCD will always be 1 because  $p$  is prime.

```
In [19]: galois.gcd(4, 7)
Out[19]: (1, 2, -1)
```

The `galois` package uses the Extended Euclidean Algorithm to compute multiplicative inverses (and division) in prime fields. The inverse of 4 in GF(7) can be easily computed in the following way.

```
In [20]: y = GF7(4); y
Out[20]: GF(4, order=7)

In [21]: np.reciprocal(y)
Out[21]: GF(2, order=7)

In [22]: y ** -1
Out[22]: GF(2, order=7)
```

With this in mind, the division table for GF(7) can be calculated. Note that division is not defined for  $y = 0$ .

```
In [23]: print(GF7.arithmetic_table("/"))
```

x / y	1	2	3	4	5	6
0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	4	5	2	3	6
2	2	1	3	4	6	5
3	3	5	1	6	2	4
4	4	2	6	1	5	3
5	5	6	4	3	1	2
6	6	3	2	5	4	1

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

### 3.1.3 Primitive elements

A property of finite fields is that some elements can produce the entire field by their powers. Namely, a *primitive element*  $g$  of  $\text{GF}(p)$  is an element such that  $\text{GF}(p) = \{0, g^0, g^1, \dots, g^{p-1}\}$ . In prime fields  $\text{GF}(p)$ , the generators or primitive elements of  $\text{GF}(p)$  are *primitive roots mod p*.

The integer  $g$  is a *primitive root mod p* if every number coprime to  $p$  can be represented as a power of  $g \bmod p$ . Namely, every  $a$  coprime to  $p$  can be represented as  $g^k \equiv a \pmod{p}$  for some  $k$ . In prime fields, since  $p$  is prime, every integer  $1 \leq a < p$  is coprime to  $p$ . Finding primitive roots mod  $p$  is implemented in `galois.primitive_root()` and `galois.primitive_roots()`.

```
In [24]: galois.primitive_root(7)
Out[24]: 3
```

Since 3 is a primitive root mod 7, the claim is that the elements of  $\text{GF}(7)$  can be written as  $\text{GF}(7) = \{0, 3^0, 3^1, \dots, 3^6\}$ . 0 is a special element. It can technically be represented as  $g^{-\infty}$ , however that can't be computed on a computer. For the non-zero elements, they can easily be calculated as powers of  $g$ . The set  $\{3^0, 3^1, \dots, 3^6\}$  forms a cyclic multiplicative group, namely  $\text{GF}(7)^\times$ .

```
In [25]: g = GF7(3); g
Out[25]: GF(3, order=7)
```

```
In [26]: g ** np.arange(0, GF7.order - 1)
Out[26]: GF([1, 3, 2, 6, 4, 5], order=7)
```

A primitive element of  $\text{GF}(p)$  can be accessed through `galois.FieldClass.primitive_element`.

```
In [27]: GF7.primitive_element
Out[27]: GF(3, order=7)
```

The `galois` package allows you to easily display all powers of an element and their equivalent polynomial, vector, and integer representations. Let's ignore the polynomial and vector representations for now; they will become useful for extension fields.

```
In [28]: print(GF7.repr_table())
```

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0]	0
$3^0$	1	[1]	1
$3^1$	3	[3]	3
$3^2$	2	[2]	2
$3^3$	6	[6]	6
$3^4$	4	[4]	4

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$3^5$	5	[5]	5
-------	---	-----	---

There are multiple primitive elements of a given field. In the case of GF(7), 3 and 5 are primitive elements.

In [29]: GF7.primitive\_elements

Out[29]: GF([3, 5], order=7)

In [30]: print(GF7.repr\_table(GF7(5)))

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0]	0
$5^0$	1	[1]	1
$5^1$	5	[5]	5
$5^2$	4	[4]	4
$5^3$	6	[6]	6
$5^4$	2	[2]	2
$5^5$	3	[3]	3

And it can be seen that every other element of GF(7) is not a generator of the multiplicative group. For instance, 2 does not generate the multiplicative group  $\text{GF}(7)^\times$ .

In [31]: print(GF7.repr\_table(GF7(2)))

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0]	0
$2^0$	1	[1]	1
$2^1$	2	[2]	2
$2^2$	4	[4]	4
$2^3$	1	[1]	1
$2^4$	2	[2]	2
$2^5$	4	[4]	4

## 3.2 Intro to Galois Fields: Extension Fields

As discussed in the previous tutorial, a finite field is a finite set that is closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Galois proved that finite fields exist only when their *order* (or size of the set) is a prime power  $p^m$ . When the order is prime, the arithmetic can be *mostly* computed using integer arithmetic mod  $p$ . In the case of prime power order, namely extension fields  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ , the finite field arithmetic is computed using polynomials over  $\text{GF}(p)$  with degree less than  $m$ .

### 3.2.1 Elements

The elements of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  can be thought of as the integers  $\{0, 1, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ , although their arithmetic doesn't obey integer arithmetic. A more common interpretation is to view the elements of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  as polynomials over  $\text{GF}(p)$  with degree less than  $m$ , for instance  $a_{m-1}x^{m-1} + a_{m-2}x^{m-2} + \dots + a_1x^1 + a_0 \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$ .

For example, consider the finite field  $\text{GF}(3^2)$ . The order of the field is 9, so we know there are 9 elements. The only question is what to call each element and how to represent them.

```
In [1]: GF9 = galois.GF(9); GF9
Out[1]: <class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(3^2)'>

In [2]: print(GF9.properties)
GF(3^2):
    characteristic: 3
    degree: 2
    order: 9
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(3, order=3^2)
```

In `galois`, the default element display mode is the integer representation. This is natural when storing and working with integer numpy arrays. However, there are other representations and at times it may be useful to view the elements in one of those representations.

```
In [3]: GF9.Elements()
Out[3]: GF([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8], order=3^2)
```

Below, we will view the representation table again to compare and contrast the different equivalent representations.

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0]	0
$^0$	1	[0, 1]	1
$^1$		[1, 0]	3
$^2$	$+ 1$	[1, 1]	4
$^3$	$2 + 1$	[2, 1]	7
$^4$	2	[0, 2]	2

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$\wedge 5$	2	[2, 0]	6
$\wedge 6$	$2 + 2$	[2, 2]	8
$\wedge 7$	$+ 2$	[1, 2]	5

As before, there are some elements whose powers generate the field; we'll skip them for now. The main takeaway from this table is the equivalence of the integer representation and the polynomial (or vector) representation. In  $GF(3^2)$ , the element  $2\alpha + 1$  is a polynomial that can be thought of as  $2x + 1$  (we'll explain why  $\alpha$  is used later). The conversion between the polynomial and integer representation is performed simply by substituting  $x = 3$  into the polynomial  $2 * 3 + 1 = 7$ , using normal integer arithmetic.

With `galois`, we can represent a single Galois field element using `GF9(int)` or `GF9(string)`.

```
# Create a single field element from its integer representation
In [5]: GF9(7)
Out[5]: GF(7, order=3^2)

# Create a single field element from its polynomial representation
In [6]: GF9("2x + 1")
Out[6]: GF(7, order=3^2)

# Create a single field element from its vector representation
In [7]: GF9.Vector([2, 1])
Out[7]: GF(7, order=3^2)
```

In addition to scalars, these conversions work for arrays.

```
In [8]: GF9([4, 8, 7])
Out[8]: GF([4, 8, 7], order=3^2)

In [9]: GF9(["x + 1", "2x + 2", "2x + 1"])
Out[9]: GF([4, 8, 7], order=3^2)

In [10]: GF9.Vector([[1,1], [2,2], [2,1]])
Out[10]: GF([4, 8, 7], order=3^2)
```

Anytime you have a large array, you can easily view its elements in whichever mode is most illustrative.

```
In [11]: x = GF9.Random(10); x
Out[11]: GF([5, 0, 4, 4, 2, 8, 0, 5, 6, 5], order=3^2)

# Temporarily print x using the power representation
In [12]: with GF9.display("power"):
....:     print(x)
....:
GF([^7, 0, ^2, ^2, ^4, ^6, 0, ^7, ^5, ^7], order=3^2)

# Permanently set the display mode to the polynomial representation
In [13]: GF9.display("poly"); x
Out[13]: GF([ + 2, 0, + 1, + 1, 2, 2 + 2, 0, + 2, 2, + 2], order=3^2)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Reset the display mode to the integer representation
In [14]: GF9.display(); x
Out[14]: GF([5, 0, 4, 4, 2, 8, 0, 5, 6, 5], order=3^2)

# Or convert the (10,) array of GF(p^m) elements to a (10,2) array of vectors over GF(p)
In [15]: x.vector()
Out[15]:
GF([[1, 2],
    [0, 0],
    [1, 1],
    [1, 1],
    [0, 2],
    [2, 2],
    [0, 0],
    [1, 2],
    [2, 0],
    [1, 2]], order=3)
```

### 3.2.2 Arithmetic mod $p(x)$

In prime fields  $\text{GF}(p)$ , integer arithmetic (addition, subtraction, and multiplication) was performed and then reduced modulo  $p$ . In extension fields  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ , polynomial arithmetic (addition, subtraction, and multiplication) is performed over  $\text{GF}(p)$  and then reduced by a polynomial  $p(x)$ . This polynomial is called an irreducible polynomial because it cannot be factored over  $\text{GF}(p)$  – an analogue of a prime number.

When constructing an extension field, if an explicit irreducible polynomial is not specified, a default is chosen. The default polynomial is a Conway polynomial which is irreducible and *primitive*, see `galois.conway_poly()` for more information.

```
In [16]: p = GF9.irreducible_poly; p
Out[16]: Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))

In [17]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
Out[17]: True

# Explicit polynomial factorization returns itself as a multiplicity-1 factor
In [18]: galois.poly_factors(p)
Out[18]: ([Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))], [1])
```

Polynomial addition and subtraction never result in polynomials of larger degree, so it is unnecessary to reduce them modulo  $p(x)$ . Let's try an example of addition. Suppose two field elements  $a = x + 2$  and  $b = x + 1$ . These polynomials add degree-wise in  $\text{GF}(p)$ . Relatively easily we can see that  $a + b = (1 + 1)x + (2 + 1) = 2x$ . But we can use `galois` and `galois.Poly` to confirm this.

```
In [19]: GF3 = galois.GF(3)

# Explicitly create a polynomial over GF(3) to represent a
In [20]: a = galois.Poly([1, 2], field=GF3); a
Out[20]: Poly(x + 2, GF(3))
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [21]: a.integer
Out[21]: 5

# Explicitly create a polynomial over GF(3) to represent b
In [22]: b = galois.Poly([1, 1], field=GF3); b
Out[22]: Poly(x + 1, GF(3))

In [23]: b.integer
Out[23]: 4

In [24]: c = a + b; c
Out[24]: Poly(2x, GF(3))

In [25]: c.integer
Out[25]: 6
```

We can do the equivalent calculation directly in the field  $\text{GF}(3^2)$ .

```
In [26]: a = GF9("x + 2"); a
Out[26]: GF(5, order=3^2)

In [27]: b = GF9("x + 1"); b
Out[27]: GF(4, order=3^2)

In [28]: c = a + b; c
Out[28]: GF(6, order=3^2)

# Or view the answer in polynomial form
In [29]: with GF9.display("poly"):
....:     print(c)
....:
GF(2, order=3^2)
```

From here, we can view the entire addition arithmetic table. And we can choose to view the elements in the integer representation or polynomial representation.

```
In [30]: print(GF9.arithmetic_table("+"))

x + y  0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8
0  0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8
-----+
1  1 | 2 | 0 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 7 | 8 | 6
-----+
2  2 | 0 | 1 | 5 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 6 | 7
-----+
3  3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 0 | 1 | 2
-----+
4  4 | 5 | 3 | 7 | 8 | 6 | 1 | 2 | 0
-----+
5  5 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 6 | 7 | 2 | 0 | 1
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

6	6		7		8		0		1		2		3		4		5
7	7		8		6		1		2		0		4		5		3
8	8		6		7		2		0		1		5		3		4

  

In [31]:	print(GF9.arithmetic_table("+", mode="poly"))																
x + y	0		1		2				+ 1		+ 2		2		2 + 1		2 + 2
0	0		1		2				+ 1		+ 2		2		2 + 1		2 + 2
1	1		2		0		+ 1		+ 2				2 + 1		2 + 2		2
2	2		0		1		+ 2				+ 1		2 + 2		2		2 + 1
			+ 1		+ 2		2		2 + 1		2 + 2		0		1		2
+ 1	+ 1		+ 2				2 + 1		2 + 2		2		1		2		0
+ 2	+ 2				+ 1		2 + 2		2		2 + 1		2		0		1
2	2		2 + 1		2 + 2		0		1		2				+ 1		+ 2
2 + 1	2 + 1		2 + 2		2		1		2		0		+ 1		+ 2		
2 + 2	2 + 2		2		2 + 1		2		0		1		+ 2				+ 1

Polynomial multiplication, however, often results in products of larger degree than the multiplicands. In this case, the result must be reduced modulo  $p(x)$ .

Let's use the same example from before with  $a = x + 2$  and  $b = x + 1$ . To compute  $c = ab$ , we need to multiply the polynomials  $c = (x + 2)(x + 1) = x^2 + 2$  in GF(3). The issue is that  $x^2 + 2$  has degree-2 and the elements of GF(3<sup>2</sup>) can have degree at most 1, hence the need to reduce modulo  $p(x)$ . After remainder division, we see that  $c = ab \equiv x \pmod{p}$ .

As before, let's compute this polynomial product explicitly first.

```
# The irreducible polynomial for GF(3^2)
In [32]: p = GF9.irreducible_poly; p
Out[32]: Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))

# Explicitly create a polynomial over GF(3) to represent a
In [33]: a = galois.Poly([1, 2], field=GF3); a
Out[33]: Poly(x + 2, GF(3))

In [34]: a.integer
Out[34]: 5

# Explicitly create a polynomial over GF(3) to represent b
In [35]: b = galois.Poly([1, 1], field=GF3); b
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

**Out[35]:** Poly(x + 1, GF(3))**In [36]:** b.integer**Out[36]:** 4**In [37]:** c = (a \* b) % p; c**Out[37]:** Poly(x, GF(3))**In [38]:** c.integer**Out[38]:** 3

And now we'll compare that direct computation of this finite field multiplication is equivalent.

**In [39]:** a = GF9("x + 2"); a**Out[39]:** GF(5, order=3^2)**In [40]:** b = GF9("x + 1"); b**Out[40]:** GF(4, order=3^2)**In [41]:** c = a \* b; c**Out[41]:** GF(3, order=3^2)

# Or view the answer in polynomial form

**In [42]:** with GF9.display("poly"):

....: print(c)

....:

GF(3, order=3^2)

Now the entire multiplication table can be shown for completeness.

**In [43]:** print(GF9.arithmetic\_table("\*", mode="poly"))

x * y	0	1	2	+ 1	+ 2	2	2 + 1	2 + 2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	2	+ 1	+ 2	2	2 + 1	2 + 2
2	0	2	1	2	2 + 2	2 + 1	+ 2	+ 1
+	1	0	+ 1	2 + 2	2 + 1	2	+ 2	2
+ 2	0	+ 2	2 + 1	1	2 + 2	2	+ 1	2
2	0	2		2 + 2	+ 2	2	+ 1	1
2 + 1	0	2 + 1	+ 2	2	2	+ 1	1	2 + 2
2 + 2	0	2 + 2	+ 1	+ 2	1	2	2 + 1	2

Division, as in  $\text{GF}(p)$ , is a little more difficult. Fortunately the Extended Euclidean Algorithm, which was used in prime fields on integers, can be used for extension fields on polynomials. Given two polynomials  $a$  and  $b$ , the Extended Euclidean Algorithm finds the polynomials  $x$  and  $y$  such that  $xa + yb = \text{gcd}(a, b)$ . This algorithm is implemented in `galois.poly_gcd()`.

If  $a$  is a field element of  $\text{GF}(3^2)$  and  $b = p(x)$ , the field's irreducible polynomial, then  $x = a^{-1}$  in  $\text{GF}(3^2)$ . Note, the GCD will always be 1 because  $p(x)$  is irreducible.

```
In [44]: p = GF9.irreducible_poly; p
```

```
Out[44]: Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))
```

```
In [45]: a = galois.Poly([1, 2], field=GF3); a
```

```
Out[45]: Poly(x + 2, GF(3))
```

```
In [46]: gcd, x, y = galois.poly_gcd(a, p); gcd, x, y
```

```
Out[46]: (Poly(1, GF(3)), Poly(x, GF(3)), Poly(2, GF(3)))
```

The claim is that  $(x + 2)^{-1} = x$  in  $\text{GF}(3^2)$  or, equivalently,  $(x + 2)(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{p(x)}$ . This can be easily verified with `galois`.

```
In [47]: (a * x) % p
```

```
Out[47]: Poly(1, GF(3))
```

`galois` performs all this arithmetic under the hood. With `galois`, performing finite field arithmetic is as simple as invoking the appropriate numpy function or binary operator.

```
In [48]: a = GF9("x + 2"); a
```

```
Out[48]: GF(5, order=3^2)
```

```
In [49]: np.reciprocal(a)
```

```
Out[49]: GF(3, order=3^2)
```

```
In [50]: a ** -1
```

```
Out[50]: GF(3, order=3^2)
```

```
# Or view the answer in polynomial form
```

```
In [51]: with GF9.display("poly"):
```

```
....:     print(a ** -1)
```

```
....:
```

```
GF(3, order=3^2)
```

And finally, for completeness, we'll include the division table for  $\text{GF}(3^2)$ . Note, division is not defined for  $y = 0$ .

```
In [52]: print(GF9.arithmetic_table("/", mode="poly"))
```

x / y	1	2		+ 1	+ 2	2	2 + 1	2 + 2
0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0
1	1	2		+ 2	2 + 2		2 + 1	2
2	2	1		2 + 1	+ 1	2	+ 2	
				2	+ 2	2	2 + 2	2 + 1

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

+ 1	+ 1		2 + 2				1		2 + 1		2		+ 2		2
+ 2	+ 2		2 + 1		2 + 2		2		1		+ 1		2		
2	2				2		2 + 1		2 + 2		1		+ 1		+ 2
2 + 1	2 + 1		+ 2		+ 1				2		2 + 2		1		2
2 + 2	2 + 2		+ 1		2		2		+ 2				2 + 1		1

### 3.2.3 Primitive elements

A property of finite fields is that some elements can produce the entire field by their powers. Namely, a *primitive element*  $g$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  is an element such that  $\text{GF}(p^m) = \{0, g^0, g^1, \dots, g^{p^m-1}\}$ .

In `galois`, the primitive elements of an extension field can be found by the class attribute `galois.FieldClass.primitive_element` and `galois.FieldClass.primitive_elements`.

```
# Switch to polynomial display mode
In [53]: GF9.display("poly");
```

```
In [54]: p = GF9.irreducible_poly; p
Out[54]: Poly(x^2 + 2x + 2, GF(3))
```

```
In [55]: GF9.primitive_element
Out[55]: GF(, order=3^2)
```

```
In [56]: GF9.primitive_elements
Out[56]: GF([, + 2, 2, 2 + 1], order=3^2)
```

This means that  $x$ ,  $x + 2$ ,  $2x$ , and  $2x + 1$  can all generate the nonzero multiplicative group  $\text{GF}(3^2)^\times$ . We can examine this by viewing the representation table using different generators.

Here is the representation table using the default generator  $g = x$ .

In [57]: print(GF9.repr_table())				
Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer	
0	0	[0, 0]	0	
$^0$	1	[0, 1]	1	
$^1$		[1, 0]	3	
$^2$	$+ 1$	[1, 1]	4	
$^3$	$2 + 1$	[2, 1]	7	
$^4$	2	[0, 2]	2	

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$\wedge 5$	2	[2, 0]	6
$\wedge 6$	$2 + 2$	[2, 2]	8
$\wedge 7$	$+ 2$	[1, 2]	5

And here is the representation table using a different generator  $g = 2x + 1$ .

In [58]: `print(GF9.repr_table(GF9("2x + 1")))`

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0]	0
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 0$	1	[0, 1]	1
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 1$	$2 + 1$	[2, 1]	7
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 2$	$2 + 2$	[2, 2]	8
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 3$		[1, 0]	3
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 4$	2	[0, 2]	2
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 5$	$+ 2$	[1, 2]	5
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 6$	$+ 1$	[1, 1]	4
$(2 + 1)^\wedge 7$	2	[2, 0]	6

All other elements cannot generate the multiplicative subgroup. Another way of putting that is that their multiplicative order is less than  $p^m - 1$ . For example, the element  $e = x + 1$  has  $\text{ord}(e) = 4$ . This can be seen because  $e^4 = 1$ .

In [59]: `print(GF9.repr_table(GF9("x + 1")))`

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0]	0
$(+ 1)^\wedge 0$	1	[0, 1]	1
$(+ 1)^\wedge 1$	$+ 1$	[1, 1]	4
$(+ 1)^\wedge 2$	2	[0, 2]	2
$(+ 1)^\wedge 3$	$2 + 2$	[2, 2]	8
$(+ 1)^\wedge 4$	1	[0, 1]	1
$(+ 1)^\wedge 5$	$+ 1$	[1, 1]	4

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$(+ 1)^6$	2	[0, 2]	2
$(+ 1)^7$	2 + 2	[2, 2]	8

### 3.2.4 Primitive polynomials

Some irreducible polynomials have special properties, these are primitive polynomial. A degree- $m$  polynomial is *primitive* over  $\text{GF}(p)$  if it has as a root that is a generator of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

In `galois`, the default choice of irreducible polynomial is a Conway polynomial, which is also a primitive polynomial. Consider the finite field  $\text{GF}(2^4)$ . The Conway polynomial for  $\text{GF}(2^4)$  is  $C_{2,4} = x^4 + x + 1$ , which is irreducible and primitive.

```
In [60]: GF16 = galois.GF(2**4)
```

```
In [61]: print(GF16.properties)
```

```
GF(2^4):
  characteristic: 2
  degree: 4
  order: 16
  irreducible_poly: Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))
  is_primitive_poly: True
  primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^4)
```

Since  $p(x) = C_{2,4}$  is primitive, it has the primitive element of  $\text{GF}(2^4)$  as a root.

```
In [62]: p = GF16.irreducible_poly; p
```

```
Out[62]: Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

```
In [63]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
```

```
Out[63]: True
```

```
In [64]: galois.is_primitive(p)
```

```
Out[64]: True
```

```
# Evaluate the irreducible polynomial over GF(2^4) at the primitive element
```

```
In [65]: p(GF16.primitive_element, field=GF16)
```

```
Out[65]: GF(0, order=2^4)
```

Since the irreducible polynomial is primitive, we write the field elements in polynomial basis with indeterminate  $\alpha$  instead of  $x$ , where  $\alpha$  represents the primitive element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . For powers of  $\alpha$  less than 4, it can be seen that  $\alpha = x$ ,  $\alpha^2 = x^2$ , and  $\alpha^3 = x^3$ .

```
In [66]: print(GF16.repr_table())
```

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0, 0, 0]	0
$\wedge 0$	1	[0, 0, 0, 1]	1

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$\wedge 1$		[0, 0, 1, 0]	2
$\wedge 2$	$\wedge 2$	[0, 1, 0, 0]	4
$\wedge 3$	$\wedge 3$	[1, 0, 0, 0]	8
$\wedge 4$	+ 1	[0, 0, 1, 1]	3
$\wedge 5$	$\wedge 2 +$	[0, 1, 1, 0]	6
$\wedge 6$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2$	[1, 1, 0, 0]	12
$\wedge 7$	$\wedge 3 + + 1$	[1, 0, 1, 1]	11
$\wedge 8$	$\wedge 2 + 1$	[0, 1, 0, 1]	5
$\wedge 9$	$\wedge 3 +$	[1, 0, 1, 0]	10
$\wedge 10$	$\wedge 2 + + 1$	[0, 1, 1, 1]	7
$\wedge 11$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 +$	[1, 1, 1, 0]	14
$\wedge 12$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + + 1$	[1, 1, 1, 1]	15
$\wedge 13$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + 1$	[1, 1, 0, 1]	13
$\wedge 14$	$\wedge 3 + 1$	[1, 0, 0, 1]	9

Extension fields do not need to be constructed from primitive polynomials, however. The polynomial  $p(x) = x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$  is irreducible, but not primitive. This polynomial can define arithmetic in  $\text{GF}(2^4)$ . The two fields (the first defined by a primitive polynomial and the second defined by a non-primitive polynomial) are *isomorphic* to one another.

```
In [67]: p = galois.Poly.Degrees([4,3,2,1,0]); p
Out[67]: Poly(x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

```
In [68]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
Out[68]: True
```

```
In [69]: galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[69]: False
```

```
In [70]: GF16_v2 = galois.GF(2**4, irreducible_poly=p)
```

```
In [71]: print(GF16_v2.properties)
GF(2^4):
  characteristic: 2
  degree: 4
  order: 16
  irreducible_poly: Poly(x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
is_primitive_poly: False
primitive_element: GF(3, order=2^4)

In [72]: with GF16_v2.display("poly"):
....:     print(GF16_v2.primitive_element)
....:
GF(x + 1, order=2^4)
```

Notice the primitive element of  $\text{GF}(2^4)$  with irreducible polynomial  $p(x) = x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$  does not have  $x + 1$  as root in  $\text{GF}(2^4)$ .

```
# Evaluate the irreducible polynomial over GF(2^4) at the primitive element
In [73]: p(GF16_v2.primitive_element, field=GF16_v2)
Out[73]: GF(6, order=2^4)
```

As can be seen in the representation table, for powers of  $\alpha$  less than 4,  $\alpha \neq x$ ,  $\alpha^2 \neq x^2$ , and  $\alpha^3 \neq x^3$ . Therefore the polynomial indeterminate used is  $x$  to distinguish it from  $\alpha$ , the primitive element.

```
In [74]: print(GF16_v2.repr_table())
```

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0, 0, 0]	0
$(x + 1)^0$	1	[0, 0, 0, 1]	1
$(x + 1)^1$	$x + 1$	[0, 0, 1, 1]	3
$(x + 1)^2$	$x^2 + 1$	[0, 1, 0, 1]	5
$(x + 1)^3$	$x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$	[1, 1, 1, 1]	15
$(x + 1)^4$	$x^3 + x^2 + x$	[1, 1, 1, 0]	14
$(x + 1)^5$	$x^3 + x^2 + 1$	[1, 1, 0, 1]	13
$(x + 1)^6$	$x^3$	[1, 0, 0, 0]	8
$(x + 1)^7$	$x^2 + x + 1$	[0, 1, 1, 1]	7
$(x + 1)^8$	$x^3 + 1$	[1, 0, 0, 1]	9
$(x + 1)^9$	$x^2$	[0, 1, 0, 0]	4
$(x + 1)^{10}$	$x^3 + x^2$	[1, 1, 0, 0]	12
$(x + 1)^{11}$	$x^3 + x + 1$	[1, 0, 1, 1]	11
$(x + 1)^{12}$	$x$	[0, 0, 1, 0]	2
$(x + 1)^{13}$	$x^2 + x$	[0, 1, 1, 0]	6

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$(x + 1)^{14}$	$x^3 + x$	$[1, 0, 1, 0]$	10
----------------	-----------	----------------	----

### 3.3 Constructing Galois field array classes

The main idea of the `galois` package is that it constructs “Galois field array classes” using `GF = galois.GF(p**m)`. Galois field array classes, e.g. `GF`, are subclasses of `numpy.ndarray` and their constructors `a = GF(array_like)` mimic the `numpy.array()` function. Galois field arrays, e.g. `a`, can be operated on like any other numpy array. For example: `a + b`, `np.reshape(a, new_shape)`, `np.multiply.reduce(a, axis=0)`, etc.

Galois field array classes are subclasses of `galois.FieldArray` with metaclass `galois.FieldClass`. The metaclass provides useful methods and attributes related to the finite field.

The Galois field  $\text{GF}(2)$  is already constructed in `galois`. It can be accessed by `galois.GF2`.

```
In [1]: GF2 = galois.GF2

In [2]: print(GF2)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>

In [3]: issubclass(GF2, np.ndarray)
Out[3]: True

In [4]: issubclass(GF2, galois.FieldArray)
Out[4]: True

In [5]: issubclass(type(GF2), galois.FieldClass)
Out[5]: True

In [6]: print(GF2.properties)
GF(2):
  characteristic: 2
  degree: 1
  order: 2
```

$\text{GF}(2^m)$  fields, where  $m$  is a positive integer, can be constructed using the class factory `galois.GF()`.

```
In [7]: GF8 = galois.GF(2**3)

In [8]: print(GF8)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2^3)'>

In [9]: issubclass(GF8, np.ndarray)
Out[9]: True

In [10]: issubclass(GF8, galois.FieldArray)
Out[10]: True

In [11]: issubclass(type(GF8), galois.FieldClass)
Out[11]: True
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [12]: print(GF8.properties)
GF(2^3):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 3
    order: 8
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^3)
```

$\text{GF}(p)$  fields, where  $p$  is prime, can be constructed using the class factory `galois.GF()`.

```
In [13]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)

In [14]: print(GF7)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>

In [15]: issubclass(GF7, np.ndarray)
Out[15]: True

In [16]: issubclass(GF7, galois.FieldArray)
Out[16]: True

In [17]: issubclass(type(GF7), galois.FieldClass)
Out[17]: True

In [18]: print(GF7.properties)
GF(7):
    characteristic: 7
    degree: 1
    order: 7
```

## 3.4 Array creation

### 3.4.1 Explicit construction

Galois field arrays can be constructed either explicitly or through `numpy` view casting. The method of array creation is the same for all Galois fields, but  $\text{GF}(7)$  is used as an example here.

```
# Represents an existing numpy array
In [1]: x_np = np.random.randint(0, 7, 10, dtype=int); x_np
Out[1]: array([1, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6])

# Create a Galois field array through explicit construction (x_np is copied)
In [2]: x = GF7(x_np); x
Out[2]: GF([1, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6], order=7)
```

### 3.4.2 View casting

```
# View cast an existing array to a Galois field array (no copy operation)
In [3]: y = x_np.view(GF7); y
Out[3]: GF([1, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6], order=7)
```

**Warning:** View casting creates a pointer to the original data and simply interprets it as a new `numpy.ndarray` subclass, namely the Galois field classes. So, if the original array is modified so will the Galois field array.

```
In [4]: x_np
Out[4]: array([1, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6])

# Add 1 (mod 7) to the first element of x_np
In [5]: x_np[0] = (x_np[0] + 1) % 7; x_np
Out[5]: array([2, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6])

# Notice x is unchanged due to the copy during the explicit construction
In [6]: x
Out[6]: GF([1, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6], order=7)

# Notice y is changed due to view casting
In [7]: y
Out[7]: GF([2, 4, 3, 3, 6, 2, 6, 4, 5, 6], order=7)
```

### 3.4.3 Alternate constructors

There are alternate constructors for convenience: `galois.FieldArray.Zeros`, `galois.FieldArray.Ones`, `galois.FieldArray.Range`, `galois.FieldArray.Random`, and `galois.FieldArray.Elements`.

```
In [8]: GF256.Random((2,5))
Out[8]:
GF([[ 97,     6,   20, 142, 173],
    [148, 162, 214,   60, 151]], order=2^8)

In [9]: GF256.Range(10,20)
Out[9]: GF([10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19], order=2^8)

In [10]: GF256.Elements()
Out[10]:
GF([  0,    1,    2,    3,    4,    5,    6,    7,    8,    9,   10,   11,   12,   13,
     14,   15,   16,   17,   18,   19,   20,   21,   22,   23,   24,   25,   26,   27,
     28,   29,   30,   31,   32,   33,   34,   35,   36,   37,   38,   39,   40,   41,
     42,   43,   44,   45,   46,   47,   48,   49,   50,   51,   52,   53,   54,   55,
     56,   57,   58,   59,   60,   61,   62,   63,   64,   65,   66,   67,   68,   69,
     70,   71,   72,   73,   74,   75,   76,   77,   78,   79,   80,   81,   82,   83,
     84,   85,   86,   87,   88,   89,   90,   91,   92,   93,   94,   95,   96,   97,
     98,   99,  100,  101,  102,  103,  104,  105,  106,  107,  108,  109,  110,  111,
    112,  113,  114,  115,  116,  117,  118,  119,  120,  121,  122,  123,  124,  125,
    126,  127,  128,  129,  130,  131,  132,  133,  134,  135,  136,  137,  138,  139,
    140,  141,  142,  143,  144,  145,  146,  147,  148,  149,  150,  151,  152,  153,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167,
168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181,
182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195,
196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209,
210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223,
224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237,
238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251,
252, 253, 254, 255], order=2^8)
```

### 3.4.4 Array dtypes

Galois field arrays support all signed and unsigned integer dtypes, presuming the data type can store values in  $[0, p^m]$ . The default dtype is the smallest valid unsigned dtype.

```
In [11]: GF = galois.GF(7)

In [12]: a = GF.Random(10); a
Out[12]: GF([4, 0, 4, 2, 6, 5, 1, 3, 1, 0], order=7)

In [13]: a.dtype
Out[13]: dtype('uint8')

# Type cast an existing Galois field array to a different dtype
In [14]: a = a.astype(np.int16); a
Out[14]: GF([4, 0, 4, 2, 6, 5, 1, 3, 1, 0], order=7)

In [15]: a.dtype
Out[15]: dtype('int16')
```

A specific dtype can be chosen by providing the `dtype` keyword argument during array creation.

```
# Explicitly create a Galois field array with a specific dtype
In [16]: b = GF.Random(10, dtype=np.int16); b
Out[16]: GF([6, 0, 1, 2, 6, 1, 4, 5, 5, 4], order=7)

In [17]: b.dtype
Out[17]: dtype('int16')
```

### 3.4.5 Field element display modes

The default representation of a finite field element is the integer representation. That is, for  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  the  $p^m$  elements are represented as  $\{0, 1, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ . For extension fields, the field elements can alternatively be represented as polynomials in  $\text{GF}(p)[x]$  with degree less than  $m$ . For prime fields, the integer and polynomial representations are equivalent because in the polynomial representation each element is a degree- $0$  polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

For example, in  $\text{GF}(2^3)$  the integer representation of the 8 field elements is  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$  and the polynomial representation is  $\{0, 1, x, x + 1, x^2, x^2 + 1, x^2 + x, x^2 + x + 1\}$ .

```
In [18]: GF = galois.GF(2**3)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

**In [19]:** `a = GF.Random(10)`

# The default mode represents the field elements as integers

**In [20]:** `a`**Out[20]:** `GF([7, 2, 5, 1, 0, 3, 1, 3, 0, 6], order=2^3)`

# The display mode can be set to "poly" mode

**In [21]:** `GF.display("poly"); a`**Out[21]:**`GF([^2 + + 1, , ^2 + 1, 1, 0, + 1, 1, + 1, 0, ^2 + ], order=2^3)`

# The display mode can be set to "power" mode

**In [22]:** `GF.display("power"); a`**Out[22]:** `GF([^5, , ^6, 1, 0, ^3, 1, ^3, 0, ^4], order=2^3)`

# Reset the display mode to the default

**In [23]:** `GF.display(); a`**Out[23]:** `GF([7, 2, 5, 1, 0, 3, 1, 3, 0, 6], order=2^3)`The `galois.FieldArray.display` method can be called as a context manager.

# The original display mode

**In [24]:** `print(a)``GF([7, 2, 5, 1, 0, 3, 1, 3, 0, 6], order=2^3)`

# The new display context

**In [25]:** `with GF.display("poly"):`.....: `print(a)`

.....:

`GF([^2 + + 1, , ^2 + 1, 1, 0, + 1, 1, + 1, 0, ^2 + ], order=2^3)`**In [26]:** `with GF.display("power"):`.....: `print(a)`

.....:

`GF([^5, , ^6, 1, 0, ^3, 1, ^3, 0, ^4], order=2^3)`

# Returns to the original display mode

**In [27]:** `print(a)``GF([7, 2, 5, 1, 0, 3, 1, 3, 0, 6], order=2^3)`

## 3.5 Galois field array arithmetic

### 3.5.1 Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division

A finite field is a set that defines the operations addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The field is closed under these operations.

```
In [1]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)

In [2]: print(GF7)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>

# Create a random GF(7) array with 10 elements
In [3]: x = GF7.Random(10); x
Out[3]: GF([3, 5, 0, 0, 1, 4, 2, 3, 1, 1], order=7)

# Create a random GF(7) array with 10 elements, with the lowest element being 1 (used to prevent ZeroDivisionError later on)
In [4]: y = GF7.Random(10, low=1); y
Out[4]: GF([4, 4, 2, 2, 1, 6, 4, 1, 3, 4], order=7)

# Addition in the finite field
In [5]: x + y
Out[5]: GF([0, 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 6, 4, 4, 5], order=7)

# Subtraction in the finite field
In [6]: x - y
Out[6]: GF([6, 1, 5, 5, 0, 5, 5, 2, 5, 4], order=7)

# Multiplication in the finite field
In [7]: x * y
Out[7]: GF([5, 6, 0, 0, 1, 3, 1, 3, 3, 4], order=7)

# Division in the finite field
In [8]: x / y
Out[8]: GF([6, 3, 0, 0, 1, 3, 4, 3, 5, 2], order=7)

In [9]: x // y
Out[9]: GF([6, 3, 0, 0, 1, 3, 4, 3, 5, 2], order=7)
```

One can easily create the addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division tables for any field. Here is an example using GF(7).

```
In [10]: X, Y = np.meshgrid(GF7.Elements(), GF7.Elements(), indexing="ij")
```

```
In [11]: X + Y
Out[11]:
GF([[0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6],
    [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 0],
    [2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 0, 1],
    [3, 4, 5, 6, 0, 1, 2],
    [4, 5, 6, 0, 1, 2, 3],
    [5, 6, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[6, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5]], order=7)
```

**In [12]:** X - Y

**Out[12]:**

```
GF([[0, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1],
    [1, 0, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2],
    [2, 1, 0, 6, 5, 4, 3],
    [3, 2, 1, 0, 6, 5, 4],
    [4, 3, 2, 1, 0, 6, 5],
    [5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0, 6],
    [6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0]], order=7)
```

**In [13]:** X \* Y

**Out[13]:**

```
GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6],
    [0, 2, 4, 6, 1, 3, 5],
    [0, 3, 6, 2, 5, 1, 4],
    [0, 4, 1, 5, 2, 6, 3],
    [0, 5, 3, 1, 6, 4, 2],
    [0, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1]], order=7)
```

**In [14]:** X, Y = np.meshgrid(GF7.Elements(), GF7.Elements()[1:], indexing="ij")

**In [15]:** X / Y

**Out[15]:**

```
GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [1, 4, 5, 2, 3, 6, 0],
    [2, 1, 3, 4, 6, 5, 0],
    [3, 5, 1, 6, 2, 4, 0],
    [4, 2, 6, 1, 5, 3, 0],
    [5, 6, 4, 3, 1, 2, 0],
    [6, 3, 2, 5, 4, 1, 0]], order=7)
```

### 3.5.2 Scalar multiplication

A finite field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  is a set that is closed under four operations: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. For multiplication,  $xy = z$  for  $x, y, z \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .

Let's define another notation for scalar multiplication. For  $x \cdot r = z$  for  $x, z \in \text{GF}(p^m)$  and  $r \in \mathbb{Z}$ , which represents  $r$  additions of  $x$ , i.e.  $x + \dots + x = z$ . In prime fields  $\text{GF}(p)$  multiplication and scalar multiplication are equivalent. However, in extension fields  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  they are not.

**Warning:** In the extension field  $\text{GF}(2^3)$ , there is a difference between  $\text{GF8}(6) * \text{GF8}(2)$  and  $\text{GF8}(6) * 2$ . The former represents the field element "6" multiplied by the field element "2" using finite field multiplication. The latter represents adding the field element "6" two times.

**In [16]:** GF8 = galois.GF(2\*\*3)

**In [17]:** a = GF8.Random(10); a

**Out[17]:** GF([1, 5, 2, 4, 1, 0, 5, 1, 7, 3], order=2^3)

```
# Calculates a x "2" in the finite field
In [18]: a * GF8(2)
Out[18]: GF([2, 1, 4, 3, 2, 0, 1, 2, 5, 6], order=2^3)

# Calculates a + a
In [19]: a * 2
Out[19]: GF([0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0], order=2^3)

In prime fields GF( $p$ ), multiplication and scalar multiplication are equivalent.
In [20]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)

In [21]: a = GF7.Random(10); a
Out[21]: GF([3, 0, 5, 2, 2, 0, 5, 6, 2, 4], order=7)

# Calculates a x "2" in the finite field
In [22]: a * GF7(2)
Out[22]: GF([6, 0, 3, 4, 4, 0, 3, 5, 4, 1], order=7)

# Calculates a + a
In [23]: a * 2
Out[23]: GF([6, 0, 3, 4, 4, 0, 3, 5, 4, 1], order=7)
```

### 3.5.3 Exponentiation

```
In [24]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)

In [25]: print(GF7)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>

In [26]: x = GF7.Random(10); x
Out[26]: GF([4, 1, 5, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 5, 2], order=7)

# Calculates "x" * "x", note 2 is not a field element
In [27]: x ** 2
Out[27]: GF([2, 1, 4, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 4, 4], order=7)
```

### 3.5.4 Logarithm

```
In [28]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)

In [29]: print(GF7)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>

# The primitive element of the field
In [30]: GF7.primitive_element
Out[30]: GF(3, order=7)

In [31]: x = GF7.Random(10, low=1); x
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Out[31]: GF([4, 4, 5, 1, 1, 5, 4, 1, 3, 1], order=7)

# Notice the outputs of log(x) are not field elements, but integers
In [32]: e = np.log(x); e
Out[32]: array([4, 4, 5, 0, 0, 5, 4, 0, 1, 0])

In [33]: GF7.primitive_element**e
Out[33]: GF([4, 4, 5, 1, 1, 5, 4, 1, 3, 1], order=7)

In [34]: np.all(GF7.primitive_element**e == x)
Out[34]: True
```

## 3.6 Extremely large fields

Arbitrarily-large  $\text{GF}(2^m)$ ,  $\text{GF}(p)$ ,  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  fields are supported. Because field elements can't be represented with `numpy.int64`, we use `dtype=object` in the `numpy` arrays. This enables use of native python `int`, which doesn't overflow. It comes at a performance cost though. There are no JIT-compiled arithmetic ufuncs. All the arithmetic is done in pure python. All the same array operations, broadcasting, ufunc methods, etc are supported.

### 3.6.1 Large $\text{GF}(p)$ fields

```
In [1]: prime = 36893488147419103183

In [2]: galois.is_prime(prime)
Out[2]: True

In [3]: GF = galois.GF(prime)

In [4]: print(GF)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(36893488147419103183) >

In [5]: a = GF.Random(10); a
Out[5]:
GF([22316025949197477800, 12686461767678170685, 16585326187870780259,
    17052355096197267060, 29879118945203194725, 13196779708051593050,
    23032305721454294778, 32637128577669071684, 5475781199783708599,
    5561321021801401980], order=36893488147419103183)

In [6]: b = GF.Random(10); b
Out[6]:
GF([17607328739604976687, 5999828378898777525, 808348455355814315,
    23300819682360861846, 6678395642071467457, 14505761508030210002,
    5179246068259011147, 18935300070845789632, 22280518650882169568,
    32134421611442253864], order=36893488147419103183)

In [7]: a + b
Out[7]:
GF([3029866541383351304, 18686290146576948210, 17393674643226594574,
    3459686631139025723, 36557514587274662182, 27702541216081803052,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
28211551789713305925, 14678940501095758133, 27756299850665878167,
802254485824552661], order=36893488147419103183)
```

### 3.6.2 Large GF(2<sup>m</sup>) fields

**In [8]:** `GF = galois.GF(2**100)`

**In [9]:** `print(GF)`

```
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2^100)'>
```

**In [10]:** `a = GF([2**8, 2**21, 2**35, 2**98]); a`

**Out[10]:**

```
GF([256, 2097152, 34359738368, 316912650057057350374175801344],
order=2^100)
```

**In [11]:** `b = GF([2**91, 2**40, 2**40, 2**2]); b`

**Out[11]:**

```
GF([2475880078570760549798248448, 1099511627776, 1099511627776, 4],
order=2^100)
```

**In [12]:** `a + b`

**Out[12]:**

```
GF([2475880078570760549798248704, 1099513724928, 1133871366144,
316912650057057350374175801348], order=2^100)
```

# Display elements as polynomials

**In [13]:** `GF.display("poly")`

**Out[13]:** `<galois.field.meta_class.DisplayContext at 0x7f78918f1c18>`

**In [14]:** `a`

**Out[14]:** `GF([^8, ^21, ^35, ^98], order=2^100)`

**In [15]:** `b`

**Out[15]:** `GF([^91, ^40, ^40, ^2], order=2^100)`

**In [16]:** `a + b`

**Out[16]:** `GF([^91 + ^8, ^40 + ^21, ^40 + ^35, ^98 + ^2], order=2^100)`

**In [17]:** `a * b`

**Out[17]:**

```
GF([^99, ^61, ^75,
 ^57 + ^56 + ^55 + ^52 + ^48 + ^47 + ^46 + ^45 + ^44 + ^43 + ^41 + ^37 + ^36 + ^35 + ^
-^34 + ^31 + ^30 + ^27 + ^25 + ^24 + ^22 + ^20 + ^19 + ^16 + ^15 + ^11 + ^9 + ^8 + ^6 + ^
-^5 + ^3 + 1],
order=2^100)
```

# Reset the display mode

**In [18]:** `GF.display()`

**Out[18]:** `<galois.field.meta_class.DisplayContext at 0x7f78918f1898>`

## PERFORMANCE TESTING

### 4.1 Performance compared with native numpy

To compare the performance of `galois` and native numpy, we'll use a prime field  $GF(p)$ . This is because it is the simplest field. Namely, addition, subtraction, and multiplication are modulo  $p$ , which can be simply computed with numpy arrays  $(x + y) \% p$ . For extension fields  $GF(p^m)$ , the arithmetic is computed using polynomials over  $GF(p)$  and can't be so tersely expressed in numpy.

#### 4.1.1 Lookup performance

For fields with order less than or equal to  $2^{20}$ , `galois` uses lookup tables for efficiency. Here is an example of multiplying two arrays in  $GF(31)$  using native numpy and `galois` with `ufunc_mode="jit-lookup"`.

```
In [1]: import numpy as np
In [2]: import galois
In [3]: GF = galois.GF(31)
In [4]: GF.ufunc_mode
Out[4]: 'jit-lookup'

In [5]: a = GF.Random(10_000, dtype=int)
In [6]: b = GF.Random(10_000, dtype=int)

In [7]: %timeit a * b
79.7 µs ± 1 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)

In [8]: aa, bb = a.view(np.ndarray), b.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of a * b using native numpy implementation
In [9]: %timeit (aa * bb) % GF.order
96.6 µs ± 2.4 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)
```

The `galois` ufunc runtime has a floor, however. This is due to a requirement to `view` the output array and convert its `dtype` with `astype()`. For example, for small array sizes numpy is faster than `galois` because it doesn't need to do these conversions.

```
In [4]: a = GF.Random(10, dtype=int)
In [5]: b = GF.Random(10, dtype=int)
In [6]: %timeit a * b
45.1 µs ± 1.82 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)
In [7]: aa, bb = a.view(np.ndarray), b.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of a * b using native numpy implementation
In [8]: %timeit (aa * bb) % GF.order
1.52 µs ± 34.8 ns per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000000 loops each)
```

However, for large N galois is strictly faster than numpy.

```
In [10]: a = GF.Random(10_000_000, dtype=int)
In [11]: b = GF.Random(10_000_000, dtype=int)
In [12]: %timeit a * b
59.8 ms ± 1.64 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)
In [13]: aa, bb = a.view(np.ndarray), b.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of a * b using native numpy implementation
In [14]: %timeit (aa * bb) % GF.order
129 ms ± 8.01 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)
```

## 4.1.2 Calculation performance

For fields with order greater than  $2^{20}$ , galois will use explicit arithmetic calculation rather than lookup tables. Even in these cases, galois is faster than numpy!

Here is an example multiplying two arrays in GF(2097169) using numpy and galois with `ufunc_mode="jit-calculate"`.

```
In [1]: import numpy as np
In [2]: import galois
In [3]: GF = galois.GF(2097169)
In [4]: GF.ufunc_mode
Out[4]: 'jit-calculate'
In [5]: a = GF.Random(10_000, dtype=int)
In [6]: b = GF.Random(10_000, dtype=int)
In [7]: %timeit a * b
68.2 µs ± 2.09 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [8]: aa, bb = a.view(np.ndarray), b.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of a * b using native numpy implementation
In [9]: %timeit (aa * bb) % GF.order
93.4 µs ± 2.12 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)
```

And again, the runtime comparison with numpy improves with large N because the time of viewing and type converting the output is small compared to the computation time. galois achieves better performance than numpy because the multiplication and modulo operations are compiled together into one ufunc rather than two.

```
In [10]: a = GF.Random(10_000_000, dtype=int)

In [11]: b = GF.Random(10_000_000, dtype=int)

In [12]: %timeit a * b
51.2 ms ± 1.08 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)

In [13]: aa, bb = a.view(np.ndarray), b.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of a * b using native numpy implementation
In [14]: %timeit (aa * bb) % GF.order
111 ms ± 1.48 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)
```

### 4.1.3 Linear algebra performance

Linear algebra over Galois fields is highly optimized. For prime fields  $GF(p)$ , the performance is comparable to the native numpy implementation (using BLAS/LAPACK).

```
In [1]: import numpy as np

In [2]: import galois

In [3]: GF = galois.GF(31)

In [4]: A = GF.Random((100, 100), dtype=int)

In [5]: B = GF.Random((100, 100), dtype=int)

In [6]: %timeit A @ B
720 µs ± 5.36 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)

In [7]: AA, BB = A.view(np.ndarray), B.view(np.ndarray)

# Equivalent calculation of A @ B using the native numpy implementation
In [8]: %timeit (AA @ BB) % GF.order
777 µs ± 4.6 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)
```

For extension fields  $GF(p^m)$ , the performance of galois is close to native numpy linear algebra (about 10x slower). However, for extension fields, each multiplication operation is equivalently a convolution (polynomial multiplication) of two m-length arrays. So it's not an apples-to-apples comparison.

Below is a comparison of galois computing the correct matrix multiplication over  $GF(2^8)$  and numpy computing

a normal integer matrix multiplication (which is not the correct result!). This comparison is just for a performance reference.

```
In [1]: import numpy as np
In [2]: import galois
In [3]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [4]: A = GF.Random((100,100), dtype=int)
In [5]: B = GF.Random((100,100), dtype=int)
In [6]: %timeit A @ B
7.13 ms ± 114 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 100 loops each)
In [7]: AA, BB = A.view(np.ndarray), B.view(np.ndarray)

# Native numpy matrix multiplication, which doesn't produce the correct result!!
In [8]: %timeit AA @ BB
651 µs ± 12.4 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)
```

```
{
  "cells": [
    {
      "cell_type": "markdown",
      "id": "subjective-appreciation",
      "metadata": {},
      "source": [
        "# GF(p) speed tests"
      ]
    },
    {
      "cell_type": "code",
      "execution_count": 1,
      "id": "hidden-costa",
      "metadata": {},
      "outputs": [],
      "source": [
        "import numpy as npn",
        "import galois"
      ]
    },
    {
      "cell_type": "code",
      "execution_count": 2,
      "id": "uniform-accuracy",
      "metadata": {},
      "outputs": [
        {
          "name": "stdout",
          "output_type": "stream",
          "text": [
            "GF(8009)n, " characteristic: 8009n, " degree: 1n", " order: 8009n, " irreducible_poly: Poly(x + 8006, GF(8009))n, " is_primitive_poly: Truen", " primitive_element: GF(3, order=8009)n, " dtypes: ['uint16', 'uint32', 'int16', 'int32', 'int64']n, " ufunc_mode: 'jit-lookup'n, " ufunc_target: 'cpu'n"
          ]
        }
      ],
      "source": [
        "prime = galois.next_prime(8000)n, " "n", " "GF = galois.GF(prime)n",
        "print(GF.properties)"
      ]
    }
  ],
  "source": []
}
```

```

}, {
    "cell_type": "code", "execution_count": 3, "id": "later-convention", "metadata": {}, "outputs": [
        {
            "name": "stdout", "output_type": "stream", "text": [
                "[‘jit-lookup’, ‘jit-calculate’]n", “[‘cpu’, ‘parallel’]n”
            ]
        }
    ], "source": [
        "modes = GF.ufunc_modesn", "targets = GF.ufunc_targetsn", "targets.remove("cuda") #\n        Can't test with a GPU on my machine", "print(modes)n", "print(targets)""
    ]
}, {
    "cell_type": "code", "execution_count": 4, "id": "described-placement", "metadata": {}, "outputs": [], "source": [
        "def speed_test(GF, N):n", "    a = GF.Random(N)n", "    b = GF.Random(N, low=1)n",
        "    n", "    for operation in [np.add, np.multiply]:n", "        print(f"Operation: {operation.__name__}")n",
        "        for target in targets:n", "            for mode in modes:n",
        "                GF.compile(mode, target)n", "                print(f"Target: {target}, Mode: {mode}", end="\n")n",
        "%timeit operation(a, b)n", "                print()n", "            for operation in [np.reciprocal, np.log]:n",
        "                print(f"Operation: {operation.__name__}")n", "            for target in targets:n",
        "                for mode in modes:n",
        "                    GF.compile(mode, target)n", "                    print(f"Target: {target}, Mode: {mode}",
        "end="\n")n", "%timeit operation(b)n", "                print()"
    ]
}, {
    "cell_type": "markdown", "id": "saving-housing", "metadata": {}, "source": [
        "## N = 10k"
    ]
}, {
    "cell_type": "code", "execution_count": 5, "id": "superb-disposal", "metadata": {}, "outputs": [
        {
            "name": "stdout", "output_type": "stream", "text": [
                "Operation: addn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "104 µs ± 1.57 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculate", "71.3 µs ± 2.95 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "The slowest run took 436.22 times longer than the fastest. This could mean that an intermediate result is being cached.n", "10.2 ms ± 18.6 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculate", "The slowest run took 24.46 times longer than the fastest. This could mean that an intermediate result is being cached.n", "3.41 ms ± 2.38 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)n", "n", "Operation: multiplyn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "93.1 µs ± 1.33 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculate", "72.1 µs ± 1.8 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "163 µs ± 1.33 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n"
            ]
        }
    ]
}

```

```

19.9 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n”, “Target:
parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten”, ”2.5 ms ± 680 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of
7 runs, 10000 loops each)n”, “n”, “Operation: reciprocals”, “Target: cpu, Mode:
jit-lookupn”, ”67.3 µs ± 929 ns per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000
loops each)n”, “Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten”, ”6.01 ms ± 61.4 µs per loop
(mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 100 loops each)n”, “Target: parallel, Mode: jit-
lookupn”, ”152 µs ± 15.9 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops
each)n”, “Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten”, ”11.1 ms ± 1.05 ms per loop
(mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 100 loops each)n”, “n”, “Operation: logn”, “Target:
cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn”, ”75.3 µs ± 242 ns per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs,
10000 loops each)n”, “Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten”, ”149 ms ± 846 µs per
loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n”, “Target: parallel, Mode: jit-
lookupn”, ”175 µs ± 16.4 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops
each)n”, “Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten”, ”56.2 ms ± 20.1 ms per loop
(mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n”, “n”
]
}
], “source”: [
“speed_test(GF, 10_000)”
]
}
], “metadata”: {
“kernelspec”: { “display_name”: “Python 3”, “language”: “python”, “name”: “python3”
}, “language_info”: {
“codemirror_mode”: { “name”: “ipython”, “version”: 3
}, “file_extension”: “.py”, “mimetype”: “text/x-python”, “name”: “python”, “nbconvert_exporter”: “python”, “pygments_lexer”: “ipython3”, “version”: “3.8.5”
}
}, “nbformat”: 4, “nbformat_minor”: 5
}
{
“cells”: [
{ “cell_type”: “markdown”, “id”: “synthetic-appeal”, “metadata”: {}, “source”: [
“# GF(2^m) speed tests”
]
}, {
“cell_type”: “code”, “execution_count”: 1, “id”: “planned-violence”, “metadata”: {}, “outputs”: [],
“source”: [
“import numpy as npn”, “import galois”
]
}, {

```

```

“cell_type”: “code”, “execution_count”: 2, “id”: “distant-letters”, “metadata”: {}, “outputs”: [
  { “name”: “stdout”, “output_type”: “stream”, “text”: [
    “GF(2^13):n”, ” characteristic: 2n”, ” degree: 13n”, ” order: 8192n”, ” irre-
    ducible_poly: Poly(x^13 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))n”, ” is_primitive_poly:
    Truen”, ” primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^13)n”, ” dtypes: [‘uint16’, ‘uint32’,
    ‘int16’, ‘int32’, ‘int64’]n”, ” ufunc_mode: ‘jit-lookup’n”, ” ufunc_target: ‘cpu’n”
  ]
}
], “source”: [
  “GF = galois.GF(2**13)n”, “print(GF.properties)”
]
}, {
  “cell_type”: “code”, “execution_count”: 3, “id”: “further-turning”, “metadata”: {}, “outputs”: [
    { “name”: “stdout”, “output_type”: “stream”, “text”: [
      “[‘jit-lookup’, ‘jit-calculate’]n”, “[‘cpu’, ‘parallel’]n”
    ]
}
], “source”: [
  “modes = GF.ufunc_modesn”, “targets = GF.ufunc_targetsn”, “targets.remove(“cuda”) #”
  “Can’t test with a GPU on my machine”n”, “print(modes)n”, “print(targets)”
]
}, {
  “cell_type”: “code”, “execution_count”: 4, “id”: “strategic-prerequisite”, “metadata”: {}, “out-
  puts”: [], “source”: [
    “def speed_test(GF, N):n”, ” a = GF.Random(N)n”, ” b = GF.Random(N, low=1)n”,
    “n”, ” for operation in [np.add, np.multiply]:n”, ” print(f“Operation: {oper-
    ation.__name__}”n”, ” for target in targets:n”, ” for mode in modes:n”, ”
    GF.compile(mode, target)n”, ” print(f“Target: {target}, Mode: {mode}”, end=”\n ”)n”,
    ” %timeit operation(a, b)n”, ” print()n”, “n”, ” for operation in [np.reciprocal, np.log]:n”,
    ” print(f“Operation: {operation.__name__}”n”, ” for target in targets:n”, ” for mode in
    modes:n”, ” GF.compile(mode, target)n”, ” print(f“Target: {target}, Mode: {mode}”,
    end=”\n ”)n”, ” %timeit operation(b)n”, ” print()”
  ]
}, {
  “cell_type”: “markdown”, “id”: “homeless-infrastructure”, “metadata”: {}, “source”: [
    “## N = 10k”
]
}, {
  “cell_type”: “code”, “execution_count”: 5, “id”: “forced-cambridge”, “metadata”: {}, “outputs”: [
]

```

```
{
  "name": "stdout",
  "output_type": "stream",
  "text": [
    "Operation: addn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "188 \u00b5s \u00b1 23.9 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten", "95.6 \u00b5s \u00b1 11.2 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "61.4 ms \u00b1 4.82 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten", "61.8 ms \u00b1 6.03 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "n", "Operation: multiplyn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "148 \u00b5s \u00b1 10.5 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten", "646 \u00b5s \u00b1 73.4 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 1000 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "59.4 ms \u00b1 4.54 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten", "59.9 ms \u00b1 4.29 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "n", "Operation: reciprocalsn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "113 \u00b5s \u00b1 7.92 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten", "9.86 ms \u00b1 1.3 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 100 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "The slowest run took 189.29 times longer than the fastest. This could mean that an intermediate result is being cached.n", "4.88 ms \u00b1 6.96 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten", "59.4 ms \u00b1 4.46 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "n", "Operation: logn", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-lookupn", "138 \u00b5s \u00b1 19 \u00b5s per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10000 loops each)n", "Target: cpu, Mode: jit-calculaten", "63.1 ms \u00b1 3.53 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-lookupn", "58.2 ms \u00b1 1.78 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "Target: parallel, Mode: jit-calculaten", "69.4 ms \u00b1 2.95 ms per loop (mean \u00b1 std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)n", "n"
  ],
  "source": [
    "speed_test(GF, 10_000)"
  ]
},
  "metadata": {
    "kernelspec": {
      "display_name": "Python 3",
      "language": "python",
      "name": "python3"
    },
    "language_info": {
      "codemirror_mode": {
        "name": "ipython",
        "version": 3
      },
      "file_extension": ".py",
      "mimetype": "text/x-python",
      "name": "python",
      "nbconvert_exporter": "python",
      "pygments_lexer": "ipython3",
      "version": "3.8.5"
    }
  },
  "nbformat": 4,
  "nbformat_minor": 5
}
}
```

## **DEVELOPMENT**

For users who would like to actively develop with `galois`, these sections may prove helpful.

### **5.1 Install for development**

The the latest code from `master` can be checked out and installed locally in an “editable” fashion.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/mhostetter/galois.git  
$ python3 -m pip install -e galois
```

### **5.2 Install for development with min dependencies**

The package dependencies have minimum supported version. They are stored in `requirements-min.txt`.

Listing 1: requirements-min.txt

```
1 numpy==1.17.3  
2 numba==0.53
```

pip installing `galois` will install the latest versions of the dependencies. If you’d like to test against the oldest supported dependencies, you can do the following:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/mhostetter/galois.git  
  
# First install the minimum version of the dependencies  
$ python3 -m pip install -r galois/requirements-min.txt  
  
# Then, installing the package won't upgrade the dependencies since their versions are ↵  
# satisfactory  
$ python3 -m pip install -e galois
```

## 5.3 Lint the package

Linting is done with [pylint](#). The linting dependencies are stored in `requirements-lint.txt`.

Listing 2: `requirements-lint.txt`

```
1 pylint
```

Install the linter dependencies.

```
$ python3 -m pip install -r requirements-lint.txt
```

Run the linter.

```
$ python3 -m pylint --rcfile=setup.cfg galois/
```

## 5.4 Run the unit tests

Unit testing is done through [pytest](#). The tests themselves are stored in `tests/`. We test against test vectors, stored in `tests/data/`, generated using [SageMath](#). See the `scripts/generate_test_vectors.py` script. The testing dependencies are stored in `requirements-test.txt`.

Listing 3: `requirements-test.txt`

```
1 pytest
2 pytest-cov
```

Install the test dependencies.

```
$ python3 -m pip install -r requirements-test.txt
```

Run the unit tests.

```
$ python3 -m pytest tests/
```

## 5.5 Build the documentation

The documentation is generated with [Sphinx](#). The dependencies are stored in `requirements-doc.txt`.

Listing 4: `requirements-doc.txt`

```
1 sphinx>=3
2 recommonmark>=0.5
3 sphinx_rtd_theme>=0.5
4 readthedocs-sphinx-ext>=1.1
5 ipykernel
6 nbsphinx
7 pandoc
8 numpy
```

Install the documentation dependencies.

```
$ python3 -m pip install -r requirements-doc.txt
```

Build the HTML documentation. The index page will be located at `docs/build/index.html`.

```
$ sphinx-build -b html -v docs/build/
```



## API REFERENCE V0.0.17

## 6.1 galois

A performant numpy extension for Galois fields.

### 6.1.1 Galois Fields

#### Galois field class creation

<code>GF(order[, irreducible_poly, ...])</code>	Factory function to construct a Galois field array class for $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>Field(order[, irreducible_poly, ...])</code>	Alias of <code>galois.GF()</code> .
<code>FieldArray(array[, dtype, copy, order, ndmin])</code>	Creates an array over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>FieldClass(name, bases, namespace, **kwargs)</code>	Defines a metaclass for all <code>galois.FieldArray</code> classes.

#### galois.GF

`class galois.GF(order, irreducible_poly=None, primitive_element=None, verify=True, mode='auto')`  
Factory function to construct a Galois field array class for  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

The created class will be a subclass of `galois.FieldArray` and instance of `galois.FieldClass`. The `galois.FieldArray` inheritance provides the `numpy.ndarray` functionality. The `galois.FieldClass` metaclass provides a variety of class attributes and methods relating to the finite field.

##### Parameters

- **order** (`int`) – The order  $p^m$  of the field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The order must be a prime power.
- **irreducible\_poly** (`int, tuple, list, numpy.ndarray, galois.Poly, optional`) – Optionally specify an irreducible polynomial of degree  $m$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that will define the Galois field arithmetic. An integer may be provided, which is the integer representation of the irreducible polynomial. A tuple, list, or ndarray may be provided, which represents the polynomial coefficients in degree-descending order. The default is `None` which uses the Conway polynomial  $C_{p,m}$  obtained from `galois.conway_poly()`.
- **primitive\_element** (`int, tuple, list, numpy.ndarray, galois.Poly, optional`) – Optionally specify a primitive element of the field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . A primitive element is a generator of the multiplicative group of the field. For prime fields  $\text{GF}(p)$ , the primitive element must be an integer and is a primitive root modulo  $p$ . For extension

fields  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ , the primitive element is a polynomial of degree less than  $m$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ . An integer may be provided, which is the integer representation of the polynomial. A tuple, list, or ndarray may be provided, which represents the polynomial coefficients in degree-descending order. The default is `None` which uses `galois.primitive_root(p)` for prime fields and `galois.primitive_element(irreducible_poly)` for extension fields.

- **verify (bool, optional)** – Indicates whether to verify that the specified irreducible polynomial is in fact irreducible and that the specified primitive element is in fact a generator of the multiplicative group. The default is `True`. For large fields and irreducible polynomials that are already known to be irreducible (and may take a long time to verify), this argument can be set to `False`. If the default irreducible polynomial and primitive element are used, no verification is performed because the defaults are already guaranteed to be irreducible and a multiplicative generator, respectively.
- **mode (str, optional)** – The type of field computation, either "auto", "jit-lookup", or "jit-calculate". The default is "auto". The "jit-lookup" mode will use Zech log, log, and anti-log lookup tables for efficient calculation. The "jit-calculate" mode will not store any lookup tables, but instead perform field arithmetic on the fly. The "jit-calculate" mode is designed for large fields that cannot or should not store lookup tables in RAM. Generally, "jit-calculate" mode will be slower than "jit-lookup". The "auto" mode will determine whether to use "jit-lookup" or "jit-calculate" based on the field's size. In "auto" mode, field's with `order <= 2**20` will use the "jit-lookup" mode.

**Returns** A new Galois field array class that is a subclass of `galois.FieldArray` and instance of `galois.FieldClass`.

**Return type** `galois.FieldClass`

---

## Examples

Construct a Galois field array class with default irreducible polynomial and primitive element.

```
# Construct a GF(2^m) class
In [1]: GF256 = galois.GF(2**8)

# Notice the irreducible polynomial is primitive
In [2]: print(GF256.properties)
GF(2^8):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 8
    order: 256
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^8)

In [3]: poly = GF256.irreducible_poly
```

Construct a Galois field specifying a specific irreducible polynomial.

```
# Field used in AES
In [4]: GF256_AES = galois.GF(2**8, irreducible_poly=galois.Poly.Degrees([8,4,3,1,
                           ↪0])))

In [5]: print(GF256_AES.properties)
GF(2^8):
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

characteristic: 2
degree: 8
order: 256
irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
is_primitive_poly: False
primitive_element: GF(3, order=2^8)

# Construct a GF(p) class
In [6]: GF571 = galois.GF(571); print(GF571.properties)
GF(571):
    characteristic: 571
    degree: 1
    order: 571

# Construct a very large GF(2^m) class
In [7]: GF2m = galois.GF(2**100); print(GF2m.properties)
GF(2^100):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 100
    order: 1267650600228229401496703205376
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^100 + x^57 + x^56 + x^55 + x^52 + x^48 + x^47 + x^46 + x^45 + x^44 + x^43 + x^41 + x^37 + x^36 + x^35 + x^34 + x^31 + x^30 + x^27 + x^25 + x^24 + x^22 + x^20 + x^19 + x^16 + x^15 + x^11 + x^9 + x^8 + x^6 + x^5 + x^3 + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^100)

# Construct a very large GF(p) class
In [8]: GFp = galois.GF(36893488147419103183); print(GFp.properties)
GF(36893488147419103183):
    characteristic: 36893488147419103183
    degree: 1
    order: 36893488147419103183

```

See [galois.FieldArray](#) for more examples of what Galois field arrays can do.

## galois.Field

```
class galois.Field(order, irreducible_poly=None, primitive_element=None, verify=True, mode='auto')
```

Alias of [galois.GF\(\)](#).

## galois.FieldArray

```
class galois.FieldArray(array, dtype=None, copy=True, order='K', ndmin=0)
Creates an array over GF( $p^m$ ).
```

The `galois.FieldArray` class is a parent class for all Galois field array classes. Any Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with prime characteristic  $p$  and positive integer  $m$ , can be constructed by calling the class factory `galois.GF(p**m)`.

**Warning:** This is an abstract base class for all Galois field array classes. `galois.FieldArray` cannot be instantiated directly. Instead, Galois field array classes are created using `galois.GF()`.

For example, one can create the  $\text{GF}(7)$  field array class as follows:

```
In [1]: GF7 = galois.GF(7)
```

```
In [2]: print(GF7)
<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(7)'>
```

This subclass can then be used to instantiate arrays over  $\text{GF}(7)$ .

```
In [3]: GF7([3,5,0,2,1])
Out[3]: GF([3, 5, 0, 2, 1], order=7)
```

```
In [4]: GF7.Random(2,5)
Out[4]:
GF([[4, 5, 3, 2, 3],
    [5, 3, 1, 6, 5]], order=7)
```

`galois.FieldArray` is a subclass of `numpy.ndarray`. The `galois.FieldArray` constructor has the same syntax as `numpy.array()`. The returned `galois.FieldArray` object is an array that can be acted upon like any other numpy array.

### Parameters

- **array (array\_like)** – The input array to be converted to a Galois field array. The input array is copied, so the original array is unmodified by changes to the Galois field array. Valid input array types are `numpy.ndarray`, `list` or `tuple` of int or str, `int`, or `str`.
- **dtype (numpy.dtype, optional)** – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.
- **copy (bool, optional)** – The `copy` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. The default is `True` which makes a copy of the input object if it's an array.
- **order ({"K", "A", "C", "F"}, optional)** – The `order` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. Valid values are "K" (default), "A", "C", or "F".
- **ndmin (int, optional)** – The `ndmin` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. The minimum number of dimensions of the output. The default is 0.

**Returns** The copied input array as a  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  field array.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

### Examples

Construct various kinds of Galois fields using `galois.GF`.

```
# Construct a GF(2^m) class
In [5]: GF256 = galois.GF(2**8); print(GF256)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(2^8)>

# Construct a GF(p) class
In [6]: GF571 = galois.GF(571); print(GF571)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(571)>

# Construct a very large GF(2^m) class
In [7]: GF2m = galois.GF(2**100); print(GF2m)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(2^100)>

# Construct a very large GF(p) class
In [8]: GFp = galois.GF(36893488147419103183); print(GFp)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(36893488147419103183)>
```

Depending on the field's order (size), only certain `dtype` values will be supported.

```
In [9]: GF256.dtypes
Out[9]:
[numpy.uint8,
 numpy.uint16,
 numpy.uint32,
 numpy.int16,
 numpy.int32,
 numpy.int64]

In [10]: GF571.dtypes
Out[10]: [numpy.uint16, numpy.uint32, numpy.int16, numpy.int32, numpy.int64]
```

Very large fields, which can't be represented using `np.int64`, can only be represented as `dtype=np.object_`.

```
In [11]: GF2m.dtypes
Out[11]: [numpy.object_]

In [12]: GFp.dtypes
Out[12]: [numpy.object_]
```

Newly-created arrays will use the smallest, valid dtype.

```
In [13]: a = GF256.Random(10); a
Out[13]: GF([ 68, 128, 248, 216, 156, 148, 241, 119, 101, 211], order=2^8)

In [14]: a.dtype
Out[14]: dtype('uint8')
```

This can be explicitly set by specifying the `dtype` keyword argument.

```
In [15]: a = GF256.Random(10, dtype=np.uint32); a
Out[15]: GF([160, 205, 161, 47, 89, 71, 77, 196, 131, 103], order=2^8)

In [16]: a.dtype
Out[16]: dtype('uint32')
```

Arrays can also be created explicitly by converting an “array-like” object.

```
# Construct a Galois field array from a list
In [17]: l = [142, 27, 92, 253, 103]; l
Out[17]: [142, 27, 92, 253, 103]

In [18]: GF256(l)
Out[18]: GF([142, 27, 92, 253, 103], order=2^8)

# Construct a Galois field array from an existing numpy array
In [19]: x_np = np.array(l, dtype=np.int64); x_np
Out[19]: array([142, 27, 92, 253, 103])

In [20]: GF256(l)
Out[20]: GF([142, 27, 92, 253, 103], order=2^8)
```

Arrays can also be created by “view casting” from an existing numpy array. This avoids a copy operation, which is especially useful for large data already brought into memory.

```
In [21]: a = x_np.view(GF256); a
Out[21]: GF([142, 27, 92, 253, 103], order=2^8)

# Changing `x_np` will change `a`
In [22]: x_np[0] = 0; x_np
Out[22]: array([ 0, 27, 92, 253, 103])

In [23]: a
Out[23]: GF([ 0, 27, 92, 253, 103], order=2^8)
```

## Constructors

<code>Elements([dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array of the field’s elements $\{0, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ .
<code>Identity(size[, dtype])</code>	Creates an $n \times n$ Galois field identity matrix.
<code>Ones(shape[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with all ones.
<code>Random([shape, low, high, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with random field elements.
<code>Range(start, stop[, step, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with a range of field elements.
<code>Vandermonde(a, m, n[, dtype])</code>	Creates a $m \times n$ Vandermonde matrix of $a \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>Vector(array[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ from length- $m$ vectors over the prime subfield $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>Zeros(shape[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with all zeros.

## Methods

<code>arithmetic_table(operation[, mode])</code>	Generates the specified arithmetic table for the Galois field.
<code>compile(mode)</code>	Recompile the just-in-time compiled numba ufuncs for a new calculation mode.
<code>display([mode])</code>	Sets the display mode for all Galois field arrays of this type.
<code>repr_table([primitive_element])</code>	Generates an element representation table comparing the power, polynomial, vector, and integer representations.

## Attributes

<code>characteristic</code>
<code>degree</code>
<code>display_mode</code>
<code>is_prime_field</code>
<code>is_primitive_poly</code>
<code>name</code>
<code>order</code>
<code>prime_subfield</code>
<code>ufunc_mode</code>

### `classmethod Elements(dtype=None)`

Creates a Galois field array of the field's elements  $\{0, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ .

**Parameters** `dtype (numpy.dtype, optional)` – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements.

The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid `dtype` for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of all the field's elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

## Examples

**In [1]:** `GF = galois.GF(31)`

**In [2]:** `GF.Elements()`

**Out[2]:**

```
GF([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4,  5,  6,  7,  8,  9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16,
    17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30], order=31)
```

---

```
classmethod Identity(size, dtype=None)
Creates an  $n \times n$  Galois field identity matrix.
```

#### Parameters

- **size** (`int`) – The size  $n$  along one axis of the matrix. The resulting array has shape `(size, size)`.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field identity matrix of shape `(size, size)`.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(31)
```

```
In [2]: GF.Identity(4)
```

```
Out[2]:
```

```
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0],
     [0, 1, 0, 0],
     [0, 0, 1, 0],
     [0, 0, 0, 1]], order=31)
```

---

```
classmethod Ones(shape, dtype=None)
```

Creates a Galois field array with all ones.

#### Parameters

- **shape** (`tuple`) – A numpy-compliant shape tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. `N` or `(N,)`, represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. `(M, N)`, represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of ones.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(31)
```

```
In [2]: GF.Ones((2,5))
```

```
Out[2]:
```

```
GF([[1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
     [1, 1, 1, 1, 1]], order=31)
```

**classmethod Random(*shape*=(), *low*=0, *high*=None, *dtype*=None)**

Creates a Galois field array with random field elements.

**Parameters**

- **shape** (*tuple*) – A numpy-compliant shape tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. N or (N,), represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. (M,N), represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **low** (*int*, *optional*) – The lowest value (inclusive) of a random field element. The default is 0.
- **high** (*int*, *optional*) – The highest value (exclusive) of a random field element. The default is None which represents the field's order  $p^m$ .
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is None which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of random field elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

**Examples**

**In [1]:** GF = galois.GF(31)

**In [2]:** GF.Random((2,5))

**Out[2]:**

```
GF([[23, 30, 19, 0, 9],
 [28, 19, 12, 9, 24]], order=31)
```

**classmethod Range(*start*, *stop*, *step*=1, *dtype*=None)**

Creates a Galois field array with a range of field elements.

**Parameters**

- **start** (*int*) – The starting value (inclusive).
- **stop** (*int*) – The stopping value (exclusive).
- **step** (*int*, *optional*) – The space between values. The default is 1.
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is None which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of a range of field elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

**Examples**

**In [1]:** GF = galois.GF(31)

**In [2]:** GF.Range(10,20)

**Out[2]:** GF([10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19], order=31)

**classmethod** **Vandermonde**(*a*, *m*, *n*, *dtype=None*)  
Creates a  $m \times n$  Vandermonde matrix of  $a \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .

#### Parameters

- **a** (*int*, *galois.FieldArray*) – An element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
- **m** (*int*) – The number of rows in the Vandermonde matrix.
- **n** (*int*) – The number of columns in the Vandermonde matrix.
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The *numpy.dtype* of the array elements. The default is *None* which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in *galois.FieldClass.dtypes*.

**Returns** The  $m \times n$  Vandermonde matrix.

**Return type** *galois.FieldArray*

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**3)

In [2]: a = GF.primitive_element

In [3]: V = GF.Vandermonde(a, 7, 7)

In [4]: with GF.display("power"):
...:     print(V)
...:
GF([[ 1,    1,    1,    1,    1,    1,    1],
   [ 1,    , ^2, ^3, ^4, ^5, ^6],
   [ 1, ^2, ^4, ^6,    , ^3, ^5],
   [ 1, ^3, ^6, ^2, ^5,    , ^4],
   [ 1, ^4,    , ^5, ^2, ^6, ^3],
   [ 1, ^5, ^3,    , ^6, ^4, ^2],
   [ 1, ^6, ^5, ^4, ^3, ^2,    ]], order=2^3)
```

---

**classmethod** **Vector**(*array*, *dtype=None*)

Creates a Galois field array over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  from length-*m* vectors over the prime subfield  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

#### Parameters

- **array** (*array\_like*) – The input array with field elements in  $\text{GF}(p)$  to be converted to a Galois field array in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The last dimension of the input array must be *m*. An input array with shape (*n1*, *n2*, *m*) has output shape (*n1*, *n2*).
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The *numpy.dtype* of the array elements. The default is *None* which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in *galois.FieldClass.dtypes*.

**Returns** A Galois field array over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

**Return type** *galois.FieldArray*

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**6)

In [2]: vec = galois.GF2.Random((3,6)); vec
Out[2]:
GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0],
 [0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0],
 [0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0]], order=2)

In [3]: a = GF.Vector(vec); a
Out[3]: GF([ 2, 16, 16], order=2^6)

In [4]: with GF.display("poly"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF([ , ^4, ^4], order=2^6)

In [5]: a.vector()
Out[5]:
GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0],
 [0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0],
 [0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0]], order=2)
```

**classmethod Zeros(*shape*, *dtype=None*)**

Creates a Galois field array with all zeros.

**Parameters**

- **shape** (*tuple*) – A numpy-compliant shape tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. N or (N,), represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. (M,N), represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype, optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is None which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of zeros.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(31)

In [2]: GF.Zeros((2,5))
Out[2]:
GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
 [0, 0, 0, 0, 0]], order=31)
```

## galois.FieldClass

**class** `galois.FieldClass(name, bases, namespace, **kwargs)`

Defines a metaclass for all `galois.FieldArray` classes.

This metaclass gives `galois.FieldArray` classes returned from `galois.GF()` class methods and properties relating to its Galois field.

### Constructors

---

---

### Methods

<code>arithmetic_table(operation[, mode])</code>	Generates the specified arithmetic table for the Galois field.
<code>compile(mode)</code>	Recompile the just-in-time compiled numba ufuncs for a new calculation mode.
<code>display([mode])</code>	Sets the display mode for all Galois field arrays of this type.
<code>repr_table([primitive_element])</code>	Generates an element representation table comparing the power, polynomial, vector, and integer representations.

### Attributes

<code>characteristic</code>	The prime characteristic $p$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>default_ufunc_mode</code>	The default ufunc arithmetic mode for this Galois field.
<code>degree</code>	The prime characteristic's degree $m$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>display_mode</code>	The representation of Galois field elements, either "int", "poly", or "power".
<code>dtypes</code>	List of valid integer <code>numpy.dtype</code> objects that are compatible with this Galois field.
<code>irreducible_poly</code>	The irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>is_extension_field</code>	Indicates if the field's order is a prime power.
<code>is_prime_field</code>	Indicates if the field's order is prime.
<code>is_primitive_poly</code>	Indicates whether the <code>irreducible_poly</code> is a primitive polynomial.
<code>name</code>	The Galois field name.
<code>order</code>	The order $p^m$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>prime_subfield</code>	The prime subfield $\text{GF}(p)$ of the extension field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>primitive_element</code>	A primitive element $\alpha$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>primitive_elements</code>	All primitive elements $\alpha$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

continues on next page

Table 7 – continued from previous page

<i>properties</i>	A formatted string displaying relevant properties of the Galois field.
<i>ufunc_mode</i>	The mode for ufunc compilation, either "jit-lookup", "jit-calculate", or "python-calculate".
<i>ufunc_modes</i>	All supported ufunc modes for this Galois field array class.

**arithmetic\_table**(*operation*, *mode='int'*)

Generates the specified arithmetic table for the Galois field.

#### Parameters

- **operation** (*str*) – Either "+", "-", "\*", or "/".
- **mode** (*str, optional*) – The display mode to represent the field elements, either "int" (default), "poly", or "power".

**Returns** A UTF-8 formatted arithmetic table.

**Return type** *str*

#### Examples

In [1]: `GF = galois.GF(3**2)`

In [2]: `print(GF.arithmetic_table("+"))`

x + y	0		1		2		3		4		5		6		7		8
0	0		1		2		3		4		5		6		7		8
1	1		2		0		4		5		3		7		8		6
2	2		0		1		5		3		4		8		6		7
3	3		4		5		6		7		8		0		1		2
4	4		5		3		7		8		6		1		2		0
5	5		3		4		8		6		7		2		0		1
6	6		7		8		0		1		2		3		4		5
7	7		8		6		1		2		0		4		5		3
8	8		6		7		2		0		1		5		3		4

In [3]: `GF = galois.GF(3**2)`

In [4]: `print(GF.arithmetic_table("+", mode="poly"))`

x + y	0		1		2				+ 1		+ 2		2		2 + 1		2 + 2	
2																		

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$\begin{array}{c} \textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow} \\ 2 \end{array}$	$0 \quad 0$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$2$	$ $		$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$1 \quad 1$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $		$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$2 \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$2 \quad 2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $		$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$2 + \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$		$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$2 \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$+ 1 \quad + 1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $		$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$0 \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$+ 2 \quad + 2$	$ $		$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$1 \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$2 \quad 2$	$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$2$	$ $		$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$+ 2 \textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$2 + 1 \quad 2 + 1$	$ $	$2 + 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $	$\textcolor{red}{u}$
$\textcolor{red}{\hookrightarrow}$	$2 + 2 \quad 2 + 2$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$2 + 1$	$ $	$2$	$ $	$0$	$ $	$1$	$ $	$+ 2$	$ $		$ $	$+ 1 \textcolor{red}{u}$

**compile(mode)**

Recompile the just-in-time compiled numba ufuncs for a new calculation mode.

**Parameters mode (str)** – The method of field computation, either "jit-lookup", "jit-calculate", "python-calculate". The "jit-lookup" mode will use Zech log, log, and anti-log lookup tables for speed. The "jit-calculate" mode will not store any lookup tables, but perform field arithmetic on the fly. The "jit-calculate" mode is designed for large fields that cannot store lookup tables in RAM. Generally, "jit-calculate" is slower than "jit-lookup". The "python-calculate" mode is reserved for extremely large fields. In this mode the ufuncs are not JIT-compiled, but are pure python functions operating on python ints. The list of valid modes for this field is in [galois.FieldClass.ufunc\\_modes](#).

**display(mode='int')**

Sets the display mode for all Galois field arrays of this type.

The display mode can be set to either the integer representation, polynomial representation, or power representation. This function updates [display\\_mode](#).

For the power representation, `np.log()` is computed on each element. So for large fields without lookup tables, this may take longer than desired.

**Parameters mode (str, optional)** – The field element display mode, either "int" (default), "poly", or "power".

---

**Examples**

Change the display mode by calling the `display()` method.

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [2]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[2]: GF(226, order=2^8)

# Change the display mode going forward
In [3]: GF.display("poly"); a
Out[3]: GF(^7 + ^6 + ^5 + , order=2^8)

In [4]: GF.display("power"); a
Out[4]: GF(^95, order=2^8)

# Reset to the default display mode
In [5]: GF.display(); a
Out[5]: GF(226, order=2^8)
```

The `display()` method can also be used as a context manager, as shown below.

For the polynomial representation, when the primitive element is  $x \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$  the polynomial indeterminate used is  $x$ .

```
In [6]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [7]: print(GF.properties)
GF(2^8):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 8
    order: 256
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^8)

In [8]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[8]: GF(241, order=2^8)

In [9]: with GF.display("poly"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(^7 + ^6 + ^5 + ^4 + 1, order=2^8)

In [10]: with GF.display("power"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(^174, order=2^8)
```

But when the primitive element is not  $x \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$ , the polynomial indeterminate used is  $x$ .

```
In [11]: GF = galois.GF(2**8, irreducible_poly=galois.Poly.Degrees([8,4,3,1,0]))

In [12]: print(GF.properties)
GF(2^8):
    characteristic: 2
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
degree: 8
order: 256
irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
is_primitive_poly: False
primitive_element: GF(3, order=2^8)
```

**In [13]:** a = GF.Random(); a**Out[13]:** GF(142, order=2^8)**In [14]:** with GF.display("poly"):

....: print(a)

....:

GF(x^7 + x^3 + x^2 + x, order=2^8)

**In [15]:** with GF.display("power"):

....: print(a)

....:

GF(^173, order=2^8)

**repr\_table(primitive\_element=None)**

Generates an element representation table comparing the power, polynomial, vector, and integer representations.

**Parameters** **primitive\_element** (`galois.FieldArray`, *optional*) – The primitive element to use for the power representation. The default is `None` which uses the field's default primitive element, `galois.FieldClass.primitive_element`.

**Returns** A UTF-8 formatted table comparing the power, polynomial, vector, and integer representations of each field element.

**Return type** `str`

**Examples****In [1]:** GF = galois.GF(2\*\*4)**In [2]:** print(GF.repr\_table())

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0, 0, 0]	0
$^0$	1	[0, 0, 0, 1]	1
$^1$		[0, 0, 1, 0]	2
$^2$	$^2$	[0, 1, 0, 0]	4
$^3$	$^3$	[1, 0, 0, 0]	8
$^4$	+ 1	[0, 0, 1, 1]	3

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$\wedge 5$	$\wedge 2 +$	[0, 1, 1, 0]	6
$\wedge 6$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2$	[1, 1, 0, 0]	12
$\wedge 7$	$\wedge 3 + + 1$	[1, 0, 1, 1]	11
$\wedge 8$	$\wedge 2 + 1$	[0, 1, 0, 1]	5
$\wedge 9$	$\wedge 3 +$	[1, 0, 1, 0]	10
$\wedge 10$	$\wedge 2 + + 1$	[0, 1, 1, 1]	7
$\wedge 11$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 +$	[1, 1, 1, 0]	14
$\wedge 12$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + + 1$	[1, 1, 1, 1]	15
$\wedge 13$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + 1$	[1, 1, 0, 1]	13
$\wedge 14$	$\wedge 3 + 1$	[1, 0, 0, 1]	9

**In [3]:** alpha = GF.primitive\_elements[-1]**In [4]:** print(GF.repr\_table(alpha))

Power	Polynomial	Vector	Integer
0	0	[0, 0, 0, 0]	0
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^0$	1	[0, 0, 0, 1]	1
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^1$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 +$	[1, 1, 1, 0]	14
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^2$	$\wedge 3 + + 1$	[1, 0, 1, 1]	11
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^3$	$\wedge 3$	[1, 0, 0, 0]	8
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^4$	$\wedge 3 + 1$	[1, 0, 0, 1]	9
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^5$	$\wedge 2 + + 1$	[0, 1, 1, 1]	7
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^6$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2$	[1, 1, 0, 0]	12
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^7$	$\wedge 2$	[0, 1, 0, 0]	4
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^8$	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + 1$	[1, 1, 0, 1]	13
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^9$	$\wedge 3 +$	[1, 0, 1, 0]	10
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^{10}$	$\wedge 2 +$	[0, 1, 1, 0]	6
$(\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + )^{11}$		[0, 0, 1, 0]	2

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

$(^3 + ^2 + )^{12}$	$ $	$\wedge 3 + \wedge 2 + + 1$	$ $	$[1, 1, 1, 1]$	$ $	15
$(^3 + ^2 + )^{13}$	$ $	$\wedge 2 + 1$	$ $	$[0, 1, 0, 1]$	$ $	5
$(^3 + ^2 + )^{14}$	$ $	$+ 1$	$ $	$[0, 0, 1, 1]$	$ $	3

**property characteristic**

The prime characteristic  $p$  of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . Adding  $p$  copies of any element will always result in 0.

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [2]: GF.characteristic
Out[2]: 2
In [3]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[3]: GF(45, order=2^8)
In [4]: a * GF.characteristic
Out[4]: GF(0, order=2^8)
```

```
In [5]: GF = galois.GF(31)
In [6]: GF.characteristic
Out[6]: 31
In [7]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[7]: GF(26, order=31)
In [8]: a * GF.characteristic
Out[8]: GF(0, order=31)
```

**Type** int**property default\_ufunc\_mode**

The default ufunc arithmetic mode for this Galois field.

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).default_ufunc_mode
Out[1]: 'jit-calculate'
In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).default_ufunc_mode
Out[2]: 'jit-lookup'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [3]: galois.GF(31).default_ufunc_mode
Out[3]: 'jit-lookup'

In [4]: galois.GF(2**100).default_ufunc_mode
Out[4]: 'python-calculate'
```

**Type** str**property degree**

The prime characteristic's degree  $m$  of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The degree is a positive integer.

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).degree
Out[1]: 1

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).degree
Out[2]: 8

In [3]: galois.GF(31).degree
Out[3]: 1

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).degree
Out[4]: 5
```

**Type** int**property display\_mode**

The representation of Galois field elements, either "int", "poly", or "power". This can be changed with `display()`.

**Examples**

For the polynomial representation, when the primitive element is  $x \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$  the polynomial indeterminate used is  $x$ .

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [2]: print(GF.properties)
GF(2^8):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 8
    order: 256
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: True
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^8)

In [3]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[3]: GF(226, order=2^8)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [4]: with GF.display("poly"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(^7 + ^6 + ^5 + , order=2^8)

In [5]: with GF.display("power"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(^95, order=2^8)
```

But when the primitive element is not  $x \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$ , the polynomial indeterminate used is  $\mathbf{x}$ .

```
In [6]: GF = galois.GF(2**8, irreducible_poly=galois.Poly.Degrees([8,4,3,1,0]))

In [7]: print(GF.properties)
GF(2^8):
characteristic: 2
degree: 8
order: 256
irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
is_primitive_poly: False
primitive_element: GF(3, order=2^8)

In [8]: a = GF.Random(); a
Out[8]: GF(30, order=2^8)

In [9]: with GF.display("poly"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x, order=2^8)

In [10]: with GF.display("power"):
...:     print(a)
...:
GF(^28, order=2^8)
```

Type str

### property dtypes

List of valid integer `numpy.dtype` objects that are compatible with this Galois field.

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2); GF.dtypes
Out[1]:
[numpy.uint8,
 numpy.uint16,
 numpy.uint32,
 numpy.int8,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
numpy.int16,
numpy.int32,
numpy.int64]
```

**In [2]:** GF = galois.GF(2\*\*8); GF.dtypes

**Out[2]:**

```
[numpy.uint8,
numpy.uint16,
numpy.uint32,
numpy.int16,
numpy.int32,
numpy.int64]
```

**In [3]:** GF = galois.GF(31); GF.dtypes

**Out[3]:**

```
[numpy.uint8,
numpy.uint16,
numpy.uint32,
numpy.int8,
numpy.int16,
numpy.int32,
numpy.int64]
```

**In [4]:** GF = galois.GF(7\*\*5); GF.dtypes

**Out[4]:** [numpy.uint16, numpy.uint32, numpy.int16, numpy.int32, numpy.int64]

For Galois fields that cannot be represented by `numpy.int64`, the only valid dtype is `numpy.object_`.

**In [5]:** GF = galois.GF(2\*\*100); GF.dtypes

**Out[5]:** [numpy.object\_]

**In [6]:** GF = galois.GF(36893488147419103183); GF.dtypes

**Out[6]:** [numpy.object\_]

Type `list`

### property `irreducible_poly`

The irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The irreducible polynomial is of degree  $m$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

---

### Examples

**In [1]:** galois.GF(2).irreducible\_poly

**Out[1]:** Poly(x + 1, GF(2))

**In [2]:** galois.GF(2\*\*8).irreducible\_poly

**Out[2]:** Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

**In [3]:** galois.GF(31).irreducible\_poly

**Out[3]:** Poly(x + 28, GF(31))

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).irreducible_poly
Out[4]: Poly(x^5 + x + 4, GF(7))
```

Type `galois.Poly`

**property `is_extension_field`**

Indicates if the field's order is a prime power.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).is_extension_field
Out[1]: False

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).is_extension_field
Out[2]: True

In [3]: galois.GF(31).is_extension_field
Out[3]: False

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).is_extension_field
Out[4]: True
```

---

Type `bool`

**property `is_prime_field`**

Indicates if the field's order is prime.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).is_prime_field
Out[1]: True

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).is_prime_field
Out[2]: False

In [3]: galois.GF(31).is_prime_field
Out[3]: True

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).is_prime_field
Out[4]: False
```

---

Type `bool`

**property `is_primitive_poly`**

Indicates whether the `irreducible_poly` is a primitive polynomial.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [2]: GF.irreducible_poly
Out[2]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [3]: GF.primitive_element
Out[3]: GF(2, order=2^8)

# The irreducible polynomial is a primitive polynomial is the primitive element ↵
# is a root
In [4]: GF.irreducible_poly(GF.primitive_element, field=GF)
Out[4]: GF(0, order=2^8)

In [5]: GF.is_primitive_poly
Out[5]: True
```

---

```
# Field used in AES
In [6]: GF = galois.GF(2**8, irreducible_poly=galois.Poly.Degrees([8,4,3,1,0]))

In [7]: GF.irreducible_poly
Out[7]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))

In [8]: GF.primitive_element
Out[8]: GF(3, order=2^8)

# The irreducible polynomial is a primitive polynomial is the primitive element ↵
# is a root
In [9]: GF.irreducible_poly(GF.primitive_element, field=GF)
Out[9]: GF(6, order=2^8)

In [10]: GF.is_primitive_poly
Out[10]: False
```

---

**Type** bool**property name**

The Galois field name.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).name
Out[1]: 'GF(2)'

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).name
Out[2]: 'GF(2^8)'

In [3]: galois.GF(31).name
Out[3]: 'GF(31)'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).name
Out[4]: 'GF(7^5)'
```

Type str

#### property order

The order  $p^m$  of the Galois field GF( $p^m$ ). The order of the field is also equal to the field's size.

#### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).order
Out[1]: 2

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).order
Out[2]: 256

In [3]: galois.GF(31).order
Out[3]: 31

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).order
Out[4]: 16807
```

Type int

#### property prime\_subfield

The prime subfield GF( $p$ ) of the extension field GF( $p^m$ ).

#### Examples

```
In [1]: print(galois.GF(2).prime_subfield.properties)
GF(2):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 1
    order: 2

In [2]: print(galois.GF(2**8).prime_subfield.properties)
GF(2):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 1
    order: 2

In [3]: print(galois.GF(31).prime_subfield.properties)
GF(31):
    characteristic: 31
    degree: 1
    order: 31
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [4]: print(galois.GF(7**5).prime_subfield.properties)
GF(7):
    characteristic: 7
    degree: 1
    order: 7
```

**Type** `galois.FieldClass`**property primitive\_element**

A primitive element  $\alpha$  of the Galois field  $GF(p^m)$ . A primitive element is a multiplicative generator of the field, such that  $GF(p^m) = \{0, 1, \alpha^1, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{p^m-2}\}$ .

A primitive element is a root of the primitive polynomial  $f(x)$ , such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$  over  $GF(p^m)$ .

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).primitive_element
Out[1]: GF(1, order=2)

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).primitive_element
Out[2]: GF(2, order=2^8)

In [3]: galois.GF(31).primitive_element
Out[3]: GF(3, order=31)

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).primitive_element
Out[4]: GF(7, order=7^5)
```

**Type** `int`**property primitive\_elements**

All primitive elements  $\alpha$  of the Galois field  $GF(p^m)$ . A primitive element is a multiplicative generator of the field, such that  $GF(p^m) = \{0, 1, \alpha^1, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{p^m-2}\}$ .

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).primitive_elements
Out[1]: GF([1], order=2)

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).primitive_elements
Out[2]:
GF([
  2, 4, 6, 9, 13, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 25, 27,
  29, 30, 31, 34, 35, 40, 42, 43, 48, 49, 50, 52, 57, 60,
  63, 65, 66, 67, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 81, 82, 83, 84,
  88, 90, 91, 92, 93, 95, 98, 99, 104, 105, 109, 111, 112, 113,
  118, 119, 121, 122, 123, 126, 128, 129, 131, 133, 135, 136, 137, 140,
  141, 142, 144, 148, 149, 151, 154, 155, 157, 158, 159, 162, 163, 164,
  165, 170, 171, 175, 176, 177, 178, 183, 187, 188, 189, 192, 194, 198,
  199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 216, 218, 222,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
224, 225, 227, 229, 232, 234, 236, 238, 240, 243, 246, 247, 248, 249,  
250, 254], order=2^8)
```

**In [3]:** galois.GF(31).primitive\_elements

**Out[3]:** GF([ 3, 11, 12, 13, 17, 21, 22, 24], order=31)

**In [4]:** galois.GF(7\*\*5).primitive\_elements

**Out[4]:** GF([ 7, 8, 14, ..., 16797, 16798, 16803], order=7^5)

Type int

### property properties

A formatted string displaying relevant properties of the Galois field.

### Examples

**In [1]:** GF = galois.GF(2); print(GF.properties)

```
GF(2):  
    characteristic: 2  
    degree: 1  
    order: 2
```

**In [2]:** GF = galois.GF(2\*\*8); print(GF.properties)

```
GF(2^8):  
    characteristic: 2  
    degree: 8  
    order: 256  
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))  
    is_primitive_poly: True  
    primitive_element: GF(2, order=2^8)
```

**In [3]:** GF = galois.GF(31); print(GF.properties)

```
GF(31):  
    characteristic: 31  
    degree: 1  
    order: 31
```

**In [4]:** GF = galois.GF(7\*\*5); print(GF.properties)

```
GF(7^5):  
    characteristic: 7  
    degree: 5  
    order: 16807  
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^5 + x + 4, GF(7))  
    is_primitive_poly: True  
    primitive_element: GF(7, order=7^5)
```

Type str

**property ufunc\_mode**

The mode for ufunc compilation, either "jit-lookup", "jit-calculate", "python-calculate".

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).ufunc_mode
Out[1]: 'jit-calculate'

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).ufunc_mode
Out[2]: 'jit-lookup'

In [3]: galois.GF(31).ufunc_mode
Out[3]: 'jit-lookup'

In [4]: galois.GF(7**5).ufunc_mode
Out[4]: 'jit-lookup'
```

Type `str`

**property ufunc\_modes**

All supported ufunc modes for this Galois field array class.

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.GF(2).ufunc_modes
Out[1]: ['jit-calculate']

In [2]: galois.GF(2**8).ufunc_modes
Out[2]: ['jit-lookup', 'jit-calculate']

In [3]: galois.GF(31).ufunc_modes
Out[3]: ['jit-lookup', 'jit-calculate']

In [4]: galois.GF(2**100).ufunc_modes
Out[4]: ['python-calculate']
```

Type `list`

**Pre-made Galois field classes**

[`GF2`\(array\[, dtype, copy, order, ndmin\]\)](#)

Creates an array over GF(2).

## galois.GF2

```
class galois.GF2(array, dtype=None, copy=True, order='K', ndmin=0)
Creates an array over GF(2).
```

This class is a subclass of [galois.FieldArray](#) and instance of [galois.FieldClass](#).

### Parameters

- **array (array\_like)** – The input array to be converted to a Galois field array. The input array is copied, so the original array is unmodified by changes to the Galois field array. Valid input array types are `numpy.ndarray`, `list` or `tuple` of int or str, `int`, or `str`.
- **dtype (numpy.dtype, optional)** – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.
- **copy (bool, optional)** – The `copy` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. The default is `True` which makes a copy of the input object if it's an array.
- **order ({'K', 'A', 'C', 'F'}, optional)** – The `order` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. Valid values are "K" (default), "A", "C", or "F".
- **ndmin (int, optional)** – The `ndmin` keyword argument from `numpy.array()`. The minimum number of dimensions of the output. The default is 0.

---

### Examples

This class is equivalent (and, in fact, identical) to the class returned from the Galois field array class constructor.

```
In [1]: print(galois.GF2)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(2) '>

In [2]: GF2 = galois.GF2(2); print(GF2)
<class 'numpy.ndarray' over GF(2) '>

In [3]: GF2 is galois.GF2
Out[3]: True
```

The Galois field properties can be viewed by class attributes, see [galois.FieldClass](#).

```
# View a summary of the field's properties
In [4]: print(galois.GF2.properties)
GF(2):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 1
    order: 2

# Or access each attribute individually
In [5]: galois.GF2.irreducible_poly
Out[5]: Poly(x + 1, GF(2))

In [6]: galois.GF2.is_prime_field
Out[6]: True
```

The class's constructor mimics the call signature of `numpy.array()`.

```
# Construct a Galois field array from an iterable
In [7]: galois.GF2([1,0,1,1,0,0,1])
Out[7]: GF([1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1], order=2)

# Or an iterable of iterables
In [8]: galois.GF2([[1,0],[1,1]])
Out[8]:
GF([[1, 0],
    [1, 1]], order=2)

# Or a single integer
In [9]: galois.GF2(1)
Out[9]: GF(1, order=2)
```

## Constructors

<code>Elements([dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array of the field's elements $\{0, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ .
<code>Identity(size[, dtype])</code>	Creates an $n \times n$ Galois field identity matrix.
<code>Ones(shape[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with all ones.
<code>Random([shape, low, high, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with random field elements.
<code>Range(start, stop[, step, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with a range of field elements.
<code>Vandermonde(a, m, n[, dtype])</code>	Creates a $m \times n$ Vandermonde matrix of $a \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>Vector(array[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ from length- $m$ vectors over the prime subfield $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>Zeros(shape[, dtype])</code>	Creates a Galois field array with all zeros.

## Methods

<code>lu_decompose()</code>	Decomposes the input array into the product of lower and upper triangular matrices.
<code>lup_decompose()</code>	Decomposes the input array into the product of lower and upper triangular matrices using partial pivoting.
<code>row_reduce([ncols])</code>	Performs Gaussian elimination on the matrix to achieve reduced row echelon form.
<code>vector([dtype])</code>	Converts the Galois field array over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ to length- $m$ vectors over the prime subfield $\text{GF}(p)$ .

### classmethod `Elements(dtype=None)`

Creates a Galois field array of the field's elements  $\{0, \dots, p^m - 1\}$ .

**Parameters** `dtype` (`numpy.dtype`, *optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements.

The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid `dtype` for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of all the field's elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

### Examples

**In [10]:** `GF = galois.GF(31)`

**In [11]:** `GF.Elements()`

**Out[11]:**

```
GF([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4,  5,  6,  7,  8,  9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16,
    17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30], order=31)
```

---

### `classmethod Identity(size, dtype=None)`

Creates an  $n \times n$  Galois field identity matrix.

#### Parameters

- **size** (`int`) – The size  $n$  along one axis of the matrix. The resulting array has shape `(size, size)`.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid `dtype` for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field identity matrix of shape `(size, size)`.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

### Examples

**In [12]:** `GF = galois.GF(31)`

**In [13]:** `GF.Identity(4)`

**Out[13]:**

```
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 1, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 1, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 1]], order=31)
```

---

### `classmethod Ones(shape, dtype=None)`

Creates a Galois field array with all ones.

#### Parameters

- **shape** (`tuple`) – A numpy-compliant shape tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. `N` or `(N,)`, represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. `(M, N)`, represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid `dtype` for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of ones.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

---

## Examples

```
In [14]: GF = galois.GF(31)
```

```
In [15]: GF.Ones((2, 5))
```

```
Out[15]:
```

```
GF([[1, 1, 1, 1, 1],  
    [1, 1, 1, 1, 1]], order=31)
```

---

**classmethod Random**(*shape=()*, *low=0*, *high=None*, *dtype=None*)

Creates a Galois field array with random field elements.

### Parameters

- **shape** (*tuple*) – A numpy-compliant `shape` tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. N or (N,), represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. (M,N), represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **low** (*int*, *optional*) – The lowest value (inclusive) of a random field element. The default is 0.
- **high** (*int*, *optional*) – The highest value (exclusive) of a random field element. The default is None which represents the field's order  $p^m$ .
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is None which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of random field elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

## Examples

```
In [16]: GF = galois.GF(31)
```

```
In [17]: GF.Random((2, 5))
```

```
Out[17]:
```

```
GF([[ 4, 15, 29, 24, 17],  
    [16, 23, 13,  7,  3]], order=31)
```

---

**classmethod Range**(*start*, *stop*, *step=1*, *dtype=None*)

Creates a Galois field array with a range of field elements.

### Parameters

- **start** (*int*) – The starting value (inclusive).
- **stop** (*int*) – The stopping value (exclusive).
- **step** (*int*, *optional*) – The space between values. The default is 1.
- **dtype** (*numpy.dtype*, *optional*) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is None which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of a range of field elements.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

### Examples

```
In [18]: GF = galois.GF(31)
```

```
In [19]: GF.Range(10, 20)
```

```
Out[19]: GF([10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19], order=31)
```

---

**classmethod** `Vandermonde(a, m, n, dtype=None)`

Creates a  $m \times n$  Vandermonde matrix of  $a \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .

#### Parameters

- **a** (`int`, `galois.FieldArray`) – An element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
- **m** (`int`) – The number of rows in the Vandermonde matrix.
- **n** (`int`) – The number of columns in the Vandermonde matrix.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** The  $m \times n$  Vandermonde matrix.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

---

### Examples

```
In [20]: GF = galois.GF(2**3)
```

```
In [21]: a = GF.primitive_element
```

```
In [22]: V = GF.Vandermonde(a, 7, 7)
```

```
In [23]: with GF.display("power"):
```

```
....:     print(V)
```

```
....:
```

```
GF([[ 1,    1,    1,    1,    1,    1,    1],
    [ 1,    , ^2, ^3, ^4, ^5, ^6],
    [ 1, ^2, ^4, ^6,    , ^3, ^5],
    [ 1, ^3, ^6, ^2, ^5,    , ^4],
    [ 1, ^4,    , ^5, ^2, ^6, ^3],
    [ 1, ^5, ^3,    , ^6, ^4, ^2],
    [ 1, ^6, ^5, ^4, ^3, ^2,    ]], order=2^3)
```

---

**classmethod** `Vector(array, dtype=None)`

Creates a Galois field array over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  from length- $m$  vectors over the prime subfield  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

#### Parameters

- **array** (`array_like`) – The input array with field elements in  $\text{GF}(p)$  to be converted to a Galois field array in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The last dimension of the input array must be  $m$ . An input

array with shape (n1, n2, m) has output shape (n1, n2).

- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

### Examples

**In [24]:** `GF = galois.GF(2**6)`

**In [25]:** `vec = galois.GF2.Random((3,6)); vec`

**Out[25]:**

```
GF([[1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1],
    [1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)
```

**In [26]:** `a = GF.Vector(vec); a`

**Out[26]:** `GF([58, 39, 41], order=2^6)`

**In [27]:** `with GF.display("poly"):`

```
....:     print(a)
....:
```

```
GF([^5 + ^4 + ^3 + , ^5 + ^2 + + 1, ^5 + ^3 + 1], order=2^6)
```

**In [28]:** `a.vector()`

**Out[28]:**

```
GF([[1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1],
    [1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)
```

### classmethod `Zeros(shape, dtype=None)`

Creates a Galois field array with all zeros.

#### Parameters

- **shape** (`tuple`) – A numpy-compliant shape tuple, see `numpy.ndarray.shape`. An empty tuple () represents a scalar. A single integer or 1-tuple, e.g. `N` or `(N,)`, represents the size of a 1-dim array. An n-tuple, e.g. `(M,N)`, represents an n-dim array with each element indicating the size in each dimension.
- **dtype** (`numpy.dtype, optional`) – The `numpy.dtype` of the array elements. The default is `None` which represents the smallest valid dtype for this class, i.e. the first element in `galois.FieldClass.dtypes`.

**Returns** A Galois field array of zeros.

**Return type** `galois.FieldArray`

### Examples

**In [29]:** `GF = galois.GF(31)`

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

**In [30]:** GF.Zeros((2, 5))  
**Out[30]:**  
 GF([[0, 0, 0, 0, 0],  
 [0, 0, 0, 0, 0]], order=31)

## Prime field functions

<code>primitive_root(n[, start, stop, reverse])</code>	Finds the smallest primitive root modulo $n$ .
<code>primitive_roots(n[, start, stop, reverse])</code>	Finds all primitive roots modulo $n$ .
<code>is_primitive_root(g, n)</code>	Determines if $g$ is a primitive root modulo $n$ .

### galois.primitive\_root

`galois.primitive_root(n, start=1, stop=None, reverse=False)`

Finds the smallest primitive root modulo  $n$ .

$g$  is a primitive root if the totatives of  $n$ , the positive integers  $1 \leq a < n$  that are coprime with  $n$ , can be generated by powers of  $g$ .

Alternatively said,  $g$  is a primitive root modulo  $n$  if and only if  $g$  is a generator of the multiplicative group of integers modulo  $n$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$ . That is,  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times = \{g, g^2, \dots, g^k\}$ , where  $k$  is order of the group. The order of the group  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$  is defined by Euler's totient function,  $\phi(n) = k$ . If  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$  is cyclic, the number of primitive roots modulo  $n$  is given by  $\phi(k)$  or  $\phi(\phi(n))$ .

See [galois.is\\_cyclic](#).

#### Parameters

- **n** (`int`) – A positive integer.
- **start** (`int`, *optional*) – Starting value (inclusive) in the search for a primitive root. The default is 1. The resulting primitive root, if found, will be  $\text{start} \leq g < \text{stop}$ .
- **stop** (`int`, *optional*) – Stopping value (exclusive) in the search for a primitive root. The default is None which corresponds to n. The resulting primitive root, if found, will be  $\text{start} \leq g < \text{stop}$ .
- **reverse** (`bool`, *optional*) – Search for a primitive root in reverse order, i.e. find the largest primitive root first. Default is `False`.

**Returns** The smallest primitive root modulo  $n$ . Returns `None` if no primitive roots exist.

**Return type** `int`

## References

- V. Shoup. Searching for primitive roots in finite fields. <https://www.ams.org/journals/mcom/1992-58-197/S0025-5718-1992-1106981-9/S0025-5718-1992-1106981-9.pdf>
- L. K. Hua. On the least primitive root of a prime. <https://www.ams.org/journals/bull/1942-48-10/S0002-9904-1942-07767-6/S0002-9904-1942-07767-6.pdf>
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finite\\_field#Roots\\_of\\_unity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finite_field#Roots_of_unity)
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primitive\\_root\\_modulo\\_n](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primitive_root_modulo_n)
- <http://www.numbertheory.org/courses/MP313/lectures/lecture7/page1.html>

## Examples

Here is an example with one primitive root,  $n = 6 = 2 * 3^1$ , which fits the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#). Because  $n = 6$  is not prime, the primitive root isn't a multiplicative generator of  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

```
In [1]: n = 6

In [2]: root = galois.primitive_root(n); root
Out[2]: 5

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [3]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[3]: {1, 5}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [4]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[4]: 2

In [5]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[5]: True

# The primitive roots are the elements in Znx that multiplicatively generate the group
In [6]: for a in Znx:
...:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
...:     primitive_root = span == Znx
...:     print("Element: {}, Span: {:<6}, Primitive root: {}".format(a, span, primitive_root))
...
Element: 1, Span: {1}, Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 5}, Primitive root: True
```

Here is an example with two primitive roots,  $n = 7 = 7^1$ , which fits the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#). Since  $n = 7$  is prime, the primitive root is a multiplicative generator of  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

```
In [7]: n = 7

In [8]: root = galois.primitive_root(n); root
Out[8]: 3

# The congruence class coprime with n
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [9]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[9]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [10]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[10]: 6

In [11]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[11]: True

# The primitive roots are the elements in Znx that multiplicatively generate the
# group
In [12]: for a in Znx:
....:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
....:     primitive_root = span == Znx
....:     print("Element: {}, Span: {:<18}, Primitive root: {}".format(a,
....: str(span), primitive_root))
....:

Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 2, Span: {1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 3, Span: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6} , Primitive root: True
Element: 4, Span: {1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6} , Primitive root: True
Element: 6, Span: {1, 6} , Primitive root: False
```

The algorithm is also efficient for very large  $n$ .

Here is a counterexample with no primitive roots,  $n = 8 = 2^3$ , which does not fit the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#).

```
In [16]: n = 8

In [17]: root = galois.primitive_root(n); root

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [18]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[18]: {1, 3, 5, 7}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [19]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[19]: 4

In [20]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[20]: True
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Test all elements for being primitive roots. The powers of a primitive span the ↴
congruence classes mod n.
In [21]: for a in Znx:
    ....:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
    ....:     primitive_root = span == Znx
    ....:     print("Element: {}, Span: {}<6>, Primitive root: {}".format(a, ↴
    ↵str(span), primitive_root))
    ....:
Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 3, Span: {1, 3}, Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 5}, Primitive root: False
Element: 7, Span: {1, 7}, Primitive root: False

# Note the max order of any element is 2, not 4, which is Carmichael's lambda ↴
function
In [22]: galois.carmichael(n)
Out[22]: 2
```

## galois.primitive\_roots

`galois.primitive_roots(n, start=1, stop=None, reverse=False)`

Finds all primitive roots modulo  $n$ .

$g$  is a primitive root if the totatives of  $n$ , the positive integers  $1 \leq a < n$  that are coprime with  $n$ , can be generated by powers of  $g$ .

Alternatively said,  $g$  is a primitive root modulo  $n$  if and only if  $g$  is a generator of the multiplicative group of integers modulo  $n$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$ . That is,  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times = \{g, g^2, \dots, g^k\}$ , where  $k$  is order of the group. The order of the group  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$  is defined by Euler's totient function,  $\phi(n) = k$ . If  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$  is cyclic, the number of primitive roots modulo  $n$  is given by  $\phi(k)$  or  $\phi(\phi(n))$ .

See [galois.is\\_cyclic](#).

### Parameters

- **n** (`int`) – A positive integer.
- **start** (`int`, *optional*) – Starting value (inclusive) in the search for a primitive root. The default is 1. The resulting primitive roots, if found, will be  $\text{start} \leq x < \text{stop}$ .
- **stop** (`int`, *optional*) – Stopping value (exclusive) in the search for a primitive root. The default is `None` which corresponds to `n`. The resulting primitive roots, if found, will be  $\text{start} \leq x < \text{stop}$ .
- **reverse** (`bool`, *optional*) – List all primitive roots in descending order, i.e. largest to smallest. Default is `False`.

**Returns** All the positive primitive  $n$ -th roots of unity,  $x$ .

**Return type** `list`

## References

- V. Shoup. Searching for primitive roots in finite fields. <https://www.ams.org/journals/mcom/1992-58-197/S0025-5718-1992-1106981-9/S0025-5718-1992-1106981-9.pdf>
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finite\\_field#Roots\\_of\\_unity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finite_field#Roots_of_unity)
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primitive\\_root\\_modulo\\_n](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primitive_root_modulo_n)
- <http://www.numbertheory.org/courses/MP313/lectures/lecture7/page1.html>

## Examples

Here is an example with one primitive root,  $n = 6 = 2 * 3^1$ , which fits the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#). Because  $n = 6$  is not prime, the primitive root isn't a multiplicative generator of  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

```
In [1]: n = 6

In [2]: roots = galois.primitive_roots(n); roots
Out[2]: [5]

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [3]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[3]: {1, 5}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [4]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[4]: 2

In [5]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[5]: True

# Test all elements for being primitive roots. The powers of a primitive span the ↪
# congruence classes mod n.
In [6]: for a in Znx:
    ...:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
    ...:     primitive_root = span == Znx
    ...:     print("Element: {}, Span: {:<6}, Primitive root: {}".format(a, ↪
    ...: str(span), primitive_root))
    ...:
Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 5}, Primitive root: True

# Euler's totient function phi(phi(n)) counts the primitive roots of n
In [7]: len(roots) == galois.euler_totient(phi)
Out[7]: True
```

Here is an example with two primitive roots,  $n = 7 = 7^1$ , which fits the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#). Since  $n = 7$  is prime, the primitive root is a multiplicative generator of  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

```
In [8]: n = 7

In [9]: roots = galois.primitive_roots(n); roots
Out[9]: [3, 5]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# The congruence class coprime with n
In [10]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[10]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [11]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[11]: 6

In [12]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[12]: True

# Test all elements for being primitive roots. The powers of a primitive span the
# congruence classes mod n.
In [13]: for a in Znx:
....:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
....:     primitive_root = span == Znx
....:     print("Element: {}, Span: {:<18}, Primitive root: {}".format(a,
....: str(span), primitive_root))
....:
Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 2, Span: {1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 3, Span: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}, Primitive root: True
Element: 4, Span: {1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}, Primitive root: True
Element: 6, Span: {1, 6} , Primitive root: False

# Euler's totient function phi(phi(n)) counts the primitive roots of n
In [14]: len(roots) == galois.euler_totient(phi)
Out[14]: True
```

The algorithm is also efficient for very large  $n$ .

Here is a counterexample with no primitive roots,  $n = 8 = 2^3$ , which does not fit the definition of cyclicity, see [galois.is\\_cyclic](#).

```
In [19]: n = 8

In [20]: roots = galois.primitive_roots(n); roots
Out[20]: []

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [21]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[21]: {1, 3, 5, 7}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [22]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[22]: 4

In [23]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[23]: True

# Test all elements for being primitive roots. The powers of a primitive span the ↵
# congruence classes mod n.
In [24]: for a in Znx:
....:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
....:     primitive_root = span == Znx
....:     print("Element: {}, Span: {}, Primitive root: {}".format(a, ↵
....:     str(span), primitive_root))
....:
Element: 1, Span: {1}, Primitive root: False
Element: 3, Span: {1, 3}, Primitive root: False
Element: 5, Span: {1, 5}, Primitive root: False
Element: 7, Span: {1, 7}, Primitive root: False
```

## galois.is\_primitive\_root

`galois.is_primitive_root(g, n)`

Determines if  $g$  is a primitive root modulo  $n$ .

$g$  is a primitive root if the totatives of  $n$ , the positive integers  $1 \leq a < n$  that are coprime with  $n$ , can be generated by powers of  $g$ .

### Parameters

- **`g` (`int`)** – A positive integer that may be a primitive root modulo  $n$ .
- **`n` (`int`)** – A positive integer.

**Returns** `True` if  $g$  is a primitive root modulo  $n$ .

**Return type** `bool`

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.is_primitive_root(2, 7)
Out[1]: False
```

```
In [2]: galois.is_primitive_root(3, 7)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

**Out[2]:** True**In [3]:** galois.primitive\_roots(7)**Out[3]:** [3, 5]

## Extension field functions

<code>irreducible_poly(characteristic, degree[, ...])</code>	Returns a degree- $m$ irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>irreducible polys(characteristic, degree)</code>	Returns all degree- $m$ irreducible polynomials $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>is_irreducible(poly)</code>	Checks whether the polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ is irreducible.
<code>primitive_poly(characteristic, degree[, method])</code>	Returns a degree- $m$ primitive polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>primitive polys(characteristic, degree)</code>	Returns all degree- $m$ primitive polynomials $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>is_primitive(poly)</code>	Checks whether the polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ is primitive.
<code>conway_poly(p, n)</code>	Returns the degree- $n$ Conway polynomial $C_{p,n}$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>primitive_element(irreducible_poly[, start, ...])</code>	Finds the smallest primitive element $g(x)$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ with degree- $m$ irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>primitive_elements(irreducible_poly[, ...])</code>	Finds all primitive elements $g(x)$ of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ with degree- $m$ irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>is_primitive_element(element, irreducible_poly)</code>	Determines if $g(x)$ is a primitive element of the Galois field $\text{GF}(p^m)$ with degree- $m$ irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>minimal_poly(element)</code>	Computes the minimal polynomial $m_e(x) \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$ of a Galois field element $e \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .

### galois.irreducible\_poly

`galois.irreducible_poly(characteristic, degree, method='random')`

Returns a degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

#### Parameters

- **characteristic** (`int`) – The prime characteristic  $p$  of the field  $\text{GF}(p)$  that the polynomial is over.
- **degree** (`int`) – The degree  $m$  of the desired polynomial that produces the field extension  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  of  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **method** (`str, optional`) – The search method for finding the irreducible polynomial, either "random" (default), "smallest", or "largest". The random search method will randomly generate degree- $m$  polynomials and test for irreducibility. The smallest/largest

search method will produce polynomials in increasing/decreasing lexicographical order and test for irreducibility.

**Returns** The degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial over GF( $p$ ).

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

### Examples

```
In [1]: p = galois.irreducible_poly(7, 5); p
Out[1]: Poly(x^5 + 3x^3 + 5x^2 + 3x + 4, GF(7))

In [2]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
Out[2]: True

In [3]: p = galois.irreducible_poly(7, 5, method="smallest"); p
Out[3]: Poly(x^5 + x + 3, GF(7))

In [4]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
Out[4]: True

In [5]: p = galois.irreducible_poly(7, 5, method="largest"); p
Out[5]: Poly(x^5 + 6x^4 + 6x^3 + 6x^2 + 6x + 6, GF(7))

In [6]: galois.is_irreducible(p)
Out[6]: True
```

For the extension field GF( $2^8$ ), notice the lexicographically-smallest irreducible polynomial is not primitive. The Conway polynomial  $C_{2,8}$  is the lexicographically-smallest irreducible *and primitive* polynomial.

```
In [7]: p = galois.irreducible_poly(2, 8, method="smallest"); p
Out[7]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))

In [8]: galois.is_irreducible(p), galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[8]: (True, False)

In [9]: p = galois.conway_poly(2, 8); p
Out[9]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [10]: galois.is_irreducible(p), galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[10]: (True, True)
```

---

### galois.irreducible\_polys

`galois.irreducible_polys(characteristic, degree)`

Returns all degree- $m$  irreducible polynomials  $f(x)$  over GF( $p$ ).

#### Parameters

- **characteristic** (`int`) – The prime characteristic  $p$  of the field GF( $p$ ) that the polynomial is over.
- **degree** (`int`) – The degree  $m$  of the desired polynomial that produces the field extension GF( $p^m$ ) of GF( $p$ ).

**Returns** All degree- $m$  irreducible polynomials over GF( $p$ ).

**Return type** list

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.irreducible_polys(2, 5)
```

```
Out[1]:
```

```
[Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^3 + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))]
```

## galois.is\_irreducible

`galois.is_irreducible(poly)`

Checks whether the polynomial  $f(x)$  over GF( $p$ ) is irreducible.

A polynomial  $f(x) \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$  is *reducible* over GF( $p$ ) if it can be represented as  $f(x) = g(x)h(x)$  for some  $g(x), h(x) \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$  of strictly lower degree. If  $f(x)$  is not reducible, it is said to be *irreducible*. Since Galois fields are not algebraically closed, such irreducible polynomials exist.

This function implements Rabin's irreducibility test. It says a degree- $n$  polynomial  $f(x)$  over GF( $p$ ) for prime  $p$  is irreducible if and only if  $f(x) \mid (x^{p^n} - x)$  and  $\text{gcd}(f(x), x^{p^{m_i}} - x) = 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , where  $m_i = n/p_i$  for the  $k$  prime divisors  $p_i$  of  $n$ .

**Parameters** `poly` (`galois.Poly`) – A polynomial  $f(x)$  over GF( $p$ ).

**Returns** True if the polynomial is irreducible.

**Return type** bool

### References

- M. O. Rabin. Probabilistic algorithms in finite fields. SIAM Journal on Computing (1980), 273–280. <https://apps.dtic.mil/sti/pdfs/ADA078416.pdf>
- S. Gao and D. Panarino. Tests and constructions of irreducible polynomials over finite fields. <https://www.math.clemson.edu/~sgao/papers/GP97a.pdf>
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Factorization\\_of\\_polynomials\\_over\\_finite\\_fields](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Factorization_of_polynomials_over_finite_fields)

### Examples

```
# Conway polynomials are always irreducible (and primitive)
```

```
In [1]: f = galois.conway_poly(2, 5); f
```

```
Out[1]: Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
```

```
# f(x) has no roots in GF(2), a requirement of being irreducible
```

```
In [2]: f.roots()
```

```
Out[2]: GF([], order=2)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [3]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[3]: True
```

```
In [4]: g = galois.conway_poly(2, 4); g
Out[4]: Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

```
In [5]: h = galois.conway_poly(2, 5); h
Out[5]: Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))
```

```
In [6]: f = g * h; f
Out[6]: Poly(x^9 + x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

# Even though  $f(x)$  has no roots in  $\text{GF}(2)$ , it is still reducible

```
In [7]: f.roots()
Out[7]: GF([], order=2)
```

```
In [8]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[8]: False
```

## galois.primitive\_poly

`galois.primitive_poly(characteristic, degree, method='random')`

Returns a degree- $m$  primitive polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

### Parameters

- **characteristic** (`int`) – The prime characteristic  $p$  of the field  $\text{GF}(p)$  that the polynomial is over.
- **degree** (`int`) – The degree  $m$  of the desired polynomial that produces the field extension  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  of  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **method** (`str, optional`) – The search method for finding the primitive polynomial, either "random" (default), "smallest", or "largest". The random search method will randomly generate degree- $m$  polynomials and test for primitivity. The smallest/largest search method will produce polynomials in increasing/decreasing lexicographical order and test for primitivity.

**Returns** The degree- $m$  primitive polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

### Examples

For the extension field  $\text{GF}(2^8)$ , notice the lexicographically-smallest irreducible polynomial is not primitive. The Conway polynomial  $C_{2,8}$  is the lexicographically-smallest primitive *and* primitive polynomial.

```
In [1]: p = galois.irreducible_poly(2, 8, method="smallest"); p
Out[1]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

```
In [2]: galois.is_irreducible(p), galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[2]: (True, False)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# This is the same as the Conway polynomial C_2,8
In [3]: p = galois.primitive_poly(2, 8, method="smallest"); p
Out[3]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [4]: galois.is_irreducible(p), galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[4]: (True, True)

In [5]: p = galois.conway_poly(2, 8); p
Out[5]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [6]: galois.is_irreducible(p), galois.is_primitive(p)
Out[6]: (True, True)
```

## galois.primitive\_poly

**galois.primitive\_poly**(*characteristic*, *degree*)

Returns all degree-*m* primitive polynomials  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

### Parameters

- **characteristic** (*int*) – The prime characteristic  $p$  of the field  $\text{GF}(p)$  that the polynomial is over.
- **degree** (*int*) – The degree  $m$  of the desired polynomial that produces the field extension  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  of  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

**Returns** All degree-*m* primitive polynomials over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

**Return type** list

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.primitive_polys(2, 5)
Out[1]:
[Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^3 + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))]
```

---

**galois.is\_primitive****galois.is\_primitive**(*poly*)Checks whether the polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  is primitive.A degree- $n$  polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  is *primitive* if it is irreducible and  $f(x) \mid (x^k - 1)$  for  $k = p^n - 1$  and no  $k$  less than  $p^n - 1$ .**Parameters** **poly** ([galois.Poly](#)) – A polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .**Returns** True if the polynomial is primitive.**Return type** bool**References**

- Algorithm 4.77 from <https://cacr.uwaterloo.ca/hac/about/chap4.pdf>

**Examples**

All Conway polynomials are primitive.

```
In [1]: f = galois.conway_poly(2, 8); f
Out[1]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [2]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[2]: True

In [3]: f = galois.conway_poly(3, 5); f
Out[3]: Poly(x^5 + 2x + 1, GF(3))

In [4]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[4]: True
```

The irreducible polynomial of  $\text{GF}(2^8)$  for AES is not primitive.

```
In [5]: f = galois.Poly.Degrees([8,4,3,1,0]); f
Out[5]: Poly(x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))

In [6]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[6]: False
```

---

**galois.conway\_poly****galois.conway\_poly**(*p, n*)Returns the degree- $n$  Conway polynomial  $C_{p,n}$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .A Conway polynomial is a an irreducible and primitive polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that provides a standard representation of  $\text{GF}(p^n)$  as a splitting field of  $C_{p,n}$ . Conway polynomials provide compatibility between fields and their subfields, and hence are the common way to represent extension fields.The Conway polynomial  $C_{p,n}$  is defined as the lexicographically-minimal monic irreducible polynomial of degree  $n$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that is compatible with all  $C_{p,m}$  for  $m$  dividing  $n$ .

This function uses Frank Luebeck's Conway polynomial database for fast lookup, not construction.

**Parameters**

- **p** (`int`) – The prime characteristic of the field  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **n** (`int`) – The degree  $n$  of the Conway polynomial.

**Returns** The degree- $n$  Conway polynomial  $C_{p,n}$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

**Raises** `LookupError` – If the Conway polynomial  $C_{p,n}$  is not found in Frank Luebeck's database.

**Warning:** If the  $\text{GF}(p)$  field hasn't previously been created, it will be created in this function since it's needed for the construction of the return polynomial.

---

**Examples**

**In [1]:** `galois.conway_poly(2, 100)`

**Out[1]:** `Poly(x^100 + x^57 + x^56 + x^55 + x^52 + x^48 + x^47 + x^46 + x^45 + x^44 + x^43 + x^41 + x^37 + x^36 + x^35 + x^34 + x^31 + x^30 + x^27 + x^25 + x^24 + x^22 + x^20 + x^19 + x^16 + x^15 + x^11 + x^9 + x^8 + x^6 + x^5 + x^3 + 1, GF(2))`

**In [2]:** `galois.conway_poly(7, 13)`

**Out[2]:** `Poly(x^13 + 6x^2 + 4, GF(7))`

---

**galois.primitive\_element**

`galois.primitive_element(irreducible_poly, start=None, stop=None, reverse=False)`

Finds the smallest primitive element  $g(x)$  of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

**Parameters**

- **irreducible\_poly** (`galois.Poly`) – The degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that defines the extension field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
- **start** (`int`, *optional*) – Starting value (inclusive, integer representation of the polynomial) in the search for a primitive element  $g(x)$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The default is `None` which represents  $p$ , which corresponds to  $g(x) = x$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **stop** (`int`, *optional*) – Stopping value (exclusive, integer representation of the polynomial) in the search for a primitive element  $g(x)$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The default is `None` which represents  $p^m$ , which corresponds to  $g(x) = x^m$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **reverse** (`bool`, *optional*) – Search for a primitive element in reverse order, i.e. find the largest primitive element first. Default is `False`.

**Returns** A primitive element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$ . The primitive element  $g(x)$  is a polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$  with degree less than  $m$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(3)

In [2]: f = galois.Poly([1,1,2], field=GF); f
Out[2]: Poly(x^2 + x + 2, GF(3))

In [3]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[3]: True

In [4]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[4]: True

In [5]: galois.primitive_element(f)
Out[5]: Poly(x, GF(3))
```

```
In [6]: GF = galois.GF(3)

In [7]: f = galois.Poly([1,0,1], field=GF); f
Out[7]: Poly(x^2 + 1, GF(3))

In [8]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[8]: True

In [9]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[9]: False

In [10]: galois.primitive_element(f)
Out[10]: Poly(x + 1, GF(3))
```

## galois.primitive\_elements

`galois.primitive_elements(irreducible_poly, start=None, stop=None, reverse=False)`

Find all primitive elements  $g(x)$  of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

The number of primitive elements of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  is  $\phi(p^m - 1)$ , where  $\phi(n)$  is the Euler totient function. See :obj:galois.euler\_totient`.

### Parameters

- **irreducible\_poly** (`galois.Poly`) – The degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that defines the extension field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
- **start** (`int`, *optional*) – Starting value (inclusive, integer representation of the polynomial) in the search for primitive elements  $g(x)$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The default is `None` which represents  $p$ , which corresponds to  $g(x) = x$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **stop** (`int`, *optional*) – Stopping value (exclusive, integer representation of the polynomial) in the search for primitive elements  $g(x)$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ . The default is `None` which represents  $p^m$ , which corresponds to  $g(x) = x^m$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .
- **reverse** (`bool`, *optional*) – Search for primitive elements in reverse order, i.e. largest to smallest. Default is `False`.

**Returns** List of all primitive elements of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$ . Each primitive element  $g(x)$  is a polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$  with degree less than  $m$ .

**Return type** list

### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(3)
```

```
In [2]: f = galois.Poly([1,1,2], field=GF); f
Out[2]: Poly(x^2 + x + 2, GF(3))
```

```
In [3]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[3]: True
```

```
In [4]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[4]: True
```

```
In [5]: g = galois.primitive_elements(f); g
Out[5]: [Poly(x, GF(3)), Poly(x + 1, GF(3)), Poly(2x, GF(3)), Poly(2x + 2, GF(3))]
```

```
In [6]: len(g) == galois.euler_totient(3**2 - 1)
Out[6]: True
```

```
In [7]: GF = galois.GF(3)
```

```
In [8]: f = galois.Poly([1,0,1], field=GF); f
Out[8]: Poly(x^2 + 1, GF(3))
```

```
In [9]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[9]: True
```

```
In [10]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[10]: False
```

```
In [11]: g = galois.primitive_elements(f); g
Out[11]:
[Poly(x + 1, GF(3)),
 Poly(x + 2, GF(3)),
 Poly(2x + 1, GF(3)),
 Poly(2x + 2, GF(3))]
```

```
In [12]: len(g) == galois.euler_totient(3**2 - 1)
Out[12]: True
```

**galois.is\_primitive\_element****galois.is\_primitive\_element**(*element, irreducible\_poly*)

Determines if  $g(x)$  is a primitive element of the Galois field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$ .

The number of primitive elements of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  is  $\phi(p^m - 1)$ , where  $\phi(n)$  is the Euler totient function, see [galois.euler\\_totient](#).

**Parameters**

- **element** ([galois.Poly](#)) – An element  $g(x)$  of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  as a polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p)$  with degree less than  $m$ .
- **irreducible\_poly** ([galois.Poly](#)) – The degree- $m$  irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p)$  that defines the extension field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

**Returns** True if  $g(x)$  is a primitive element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with irreducible polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** bool

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(3)

In [2]: f = galois.Poly([1,1,2], field=GF); f
Out[2]: Poly(x^2 + x + 2, GF(3))

In [3]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[3]: True

In [4]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[4]: True

In [5]: g = galois.Poly.Identity(GF); g
Out[5]: Poly(x, GF(3))

In [6]: galois.is_primitive_element(g, f)
Out[6]: True
```

```
In [7]: GF = galois.GF(3)

In [8]: f = galois.Poly([1,0,1], field=GF); f
Out[8]: Poly(x^2 + 1, GF(3))

In [9]: galois.is_irreducible(f)
Out[9]: True

In [10]: galois.is_primitive(f)
Out[10]: False

In [11]: g = galois.Poly.Identity(GF); g
Out[11]: Poly(x, GF(3))

In [12]: galois.is_primitive_element(g, f)
Out[12]: False
```

**galois.minimal\_poly****galois.minimal\_poly(element)**Computes the minimal polynomial  $m_e(x) \in GF(p)[x]$  of a Galois field element  $e \in GF(p^m)$ .The *minimal polynomial* of a Galois field element  $e \in GF(p^m)$  is the polynomial of minimal degree over  $GF(p)$  for which  $e$  is a root when evaluated in  $GF(p^m)$ . Namely,  $m_e(x) \in GF(p)[x] \in GF(p^m)[x]$  and  $m_e(e) = 0$  over  $GF(p^m)$ .**Parameters** `element` (`galois.FieldArray`) – Any element  $e$  of the Galois field  $GF(p^m)$ . This must be a 0-dim array.**Returns** The minimal polynomial  $m_e(x)$  over  $GF(p)$  of the element  $e$ .**Return type** `galois.Poly`**Examples****In [1]:** `GF = galois.GF(2**4)`**In [2]:** `e = GF.primitive_element; e`**Out[2]:** `GF(2, order=2^4)`**In [3]:** `m_e = galois.minimal_poly(e); m_e`**Out[3]:** `Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))`# Evaluate `m_e(e)` in `GF(2^4)`**In [4]:** `m_e(e, field=GF)`**Out[4]:** `GF(0, order=2^4)`For a given element  $e$ , the minimal polynomials of  $e$  and all its conjugates are the same.# The conjugates of  $e$ **In [5]:** `conjugates = np.unique(e**(2**np.arange(0, 4))); conjugates`  
**Out[5]:** `GF([2, 3, 4, 5], order=2^4)`**In [6]:** `for conjugate in conjugates:`    `...:     print(galois.minimal_poly(conjugate))`  
    `...:``Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))``Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))``Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))``Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2))`Not all elements of  $GF(2^4)$  have minimal polynomials with degree-4.**In [7]:** `e = GF.primitive_element**5; e`  
**Out[7]:** `GF(6, order=2^4)`# The conjugates of  $e$ **In [8]:** `conjugates = np.unique(e**(2**np.arange(0, 4))); conjugates`  
**Out[8]:** `GF([6, 7], order=2^4)`

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [9]: for conjugate in conjugates:
...:     print(galois.minimal_poly(conjugate))
...:
Poly(x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))
Poly(x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

In prime fields, the minimal polynomial of  $e$  is simply  $m_e(x) = x - e$ .

```
In [10]: GF = galois.GF(7)

In [11]: e = GF(3); e
Out[11]: GF(3, order=7)

In [12]: m_e = galois.minimal_poly(e); m_e
Out[12]: Poly(x + 4, GF(7))

In [13]: m_e(e)
Out[13]: GF(0, order=7)
```

## Galois fields for cryptography

<code>Oakley1()</code>	Returns the Galois field for the first Oakley group from RFC 2409.
<code>Oakley2()</code>	Returns the Galois field for the second Oakley group from RFC 2409.
<code>Oakley3()</code>	Returns the Galois field for the third Oakley group from RFC 2409.
<code>Oakley4()</code>	Returns the Galois field for the fourth Oakley group from RFC 2409.

### galois.Oakley1

```
class galois.Oakley1
    Returns the Galois field for the first Oakley group from RFC 2409.
```

## References

- <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc2409#section-6.1>

## Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.Oakley1()

In [2]: print(GF.properties)
GF(155251809230070893513091813125848175563133404943451431320235119490296623994910210725866945387659
↪ characteristic:_
↪ 155251809230070893513091813125848175563133404943451431320235119490296623994910210725866945387659
```

(continued from previous page)

```
degree: 1
order:_
↪1552518092300708935130918131258481755631334049434514313202351194902966239949102107258669453876591
```

## galois.Oakley2

### **class galois.Oakley2**

Returns the Galois field for the second Oakley group from RFC 2409.

#### References

- <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc2409#section-6.2>

#### Examples

**In [1]:** GF = galois.Oakley2()**In [2]:** print(GF.properties)

```
GF(179769313486231590770839156793787453197860296048756011706444423684197180216158519368947833795864
↪
characteristic:_
↪179769313486231590770839156793787453197860296048756011706444423684197180216158519368947833795864
degree: 1
order:_
↪1797693134862315907708391567937874531978602960487560117064444236841971802161585193689478337958649
```

## galois.Oakley3

### **class galois.Oakley3**

Returns the Galois field for the third Oakley group from RFC 2409.

#### References

- <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc2409#section-6.3>

#### Examples

**In [1]:** GF = galois.Oakley3()**In [2]:** print(GF.properties)

```
GF(2^155):
characteristic: 2
degree: 155
order: 45671926166590716193865151022383844364247891968
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
irreducible_poly: Poly(x^155 + x^62 + 1, GF(2))
is_primitive_poly: False
primitive_element: GF(123, order=2^155)
```

## galois.Oakley4

### class galois.Oakley4

Returns the Galois field for the fourth Oakley group from RFC 2409.

### References

- <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc2409#section-6.4>

### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.Oakley4()
```

```
In [2]: print(GF.properties)
GF(2^185):
    characteristic: 2
    degree: 185
    order: 49039857307708443467467104868809893875799651909875269632
    irreducible_poly: Poly(x^185 + x^69 + 1, GF(2))
    is_primitive_poly: False
    primitive_element: GF(24, order=2^185)
```

## 6.1.2 Polynomials over Galois Fields

### Polynomial classes

---

`Poly(coeffs[, field, order])`

Create a polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

---

## galois.Poly

### class galois.Poly(coeffs, field=None, order='desc')

Create a polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

The polynomial  $f(x) = a_dx^d + a_{d-1}x^{d-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$  has coefficients  $\{a_d, a_{d-1}, \dots, a_1, a_0\}$  in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

#### Parameters

- **coeffs** (`array_like`) – The polynomial coefficients  $\{a_d, a_{d-1}, \dots, a_1, a_0\}$  with type `galois.FieldArray`, `numpy.ndarray`, `list`, or `tuple`. The first element is the highest-degree element if `order="desc"` or the first element is the 0-th degree element if `order="asc"`.

- **field** (`galois.FieldClass`, *optional*) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `None` which represents `galois.GF2`. If `coeffs` is a Galois field array, then that field is used and the `field` argument is ignored.
- **order** (`str`, *optional*) – The interpretation of the coefficient degrees, either "desc" (default) or "asc". For "desc", the first element of `coeffs` is the highest degree coefficient  $x^d$  and the last element is the 0-th degree element  $x^0$ .

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

### Examples

Create a polynomial over  $GF(2)$ .

```
In [1]: galois.Poly([1,0,1,1])
Out[1]: Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))

In [2]: galois.Poly.Degrees([3,1,0])
Out[2]: Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

Create a polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$ .

```
In [3]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [4]: galois.Poly([124,0,223,0,0,15], field=GF)
Out[4]: Poly(124x^5 + 223x^3 + 15, GF(2^8))

# Alternate way of constructing the same polynomial
In [5]: galois.Poly.Degrees([5,3,0], coeffs=[124,223,15], field=GF)
Out[5]: Poly(124x^5 + 223x^3 + 15, GF(2^8))
```

Polynomial arithmetic using binary operators.

```
In [6]: a = galois.Poly([117,0,63,37], field=GF); a
Out[6]: Poly(117x^3 + 63x + 37, GF(2^8))

In [7]: b = galois.Poly([224,0,21], field=GF); b
Out[7]: Poly(224x^2 + 21, GF(2^8))

In [8]: a + b
Out[8]: Poly(117x^3 + 224x^2 + 63x + 48, GF(2^8))

In [9]: a - b
Out[9]: Poly(117x^3 + 224x^2 + 63x + 48, GF(2^8))

# Compute the quotient of the polynomial division
In [10]: a / b
Out[10]: Poly(202x, GF(2^8))

# True division and floor division are equivalent
In [11]: a / b == a // b
Out[11]: True
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Compute the remainder of the polynomial division
In [12]: a % b
Out[12]: Poly(198x + 37, GF(2^8))

# Compute both the quotient and remainder in one pass
In [13]: divmod(a, b)
Out[13]: (Poly(202x, GF(2^8)), Poly(198x + 37, GF(2^8)))
```

## Constructors

<code>Degrees(degrees[, coeffs, field])</code>	Constructs a polynomial over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ from its non-zero degrees.
<code>Identity([field])</code>	Constructs the identity polynomial $f(x) = x$ over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>Integer(integer[, field])</code>	Constructs a polynomial over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ from its integer representation.
<code>One([field])</code>	Constructs the one polynomial $f(x) = 1$ over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .
<code>Random(degree[, field])</code>	Constructs a random polynomial over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ with degree $d$ .
<code>Roots(roots[, multiplicities, field])</code>	Constructs a monic polynomial in $\text{GF}(p^m)[x]$ from its roots.
<code>String(string[, field])</code>	Constructs a polynomial over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ from its string representation.
<code>Zero([field])</code>	Constructs the zero polynomial $f(x) = 0$ over $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

## Methods

<code>derivative([k])</code>	Computes the $k$ -th formal derivative $\frac{d^k}{dx^k} f(x)$ of the polynomial $f(x)$ .
<code>roots([multiplicity])</code>	Calculates the roots $r$ of the polynomial $f(x)$ , such that $f(r) = 0$ .

## Attributes

<code>coeffs</code>	The coefficients of the polynomial in degree-descending order.
<code>degree</code>	The degree of the polynomial, i.e. the highest degree with non-zero coefficient.
<code>degrees</code>	An array of the polynomial degrees in degree-descending order.
<code>field</code>	The Galois field array class to which the coefficients belong.
<code>integer</code>	The integer representation of the polynomial.

continues on next page

Table 17 – continued from previous page

<code>nonzero_coeffs</code>	The non-zero coefficients of the polynomial in degree-descending order.
<code>nonzero_degrees</code>	An array of the polynomial degrees that have non-zero coefficients, in degree-descending order.
<code>string</code>	The string representation of the polynomial, without specifying the Galois field.

**classmethod Degrees(degrees, coeffs=None, field=None)**Constructs a polynomial over  $GF(p^m)$  from its non-zero degrees.**Parameters**

- **degrees** (`list`) – List of polynomial degrees with non-zero coefficients.
- **coeffs** (`array_like, optional`) – List of corresponding non-zero coefficients. The default is `None` which corresponds to all one coefficients, i.e. `[1,]*len(degrees)`.
- **field** (`galois.FieldClass, optional`) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `'None'` which represents `galois.GF2`.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .**Return type** `galois.Poly`**Examples**Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2)$  by specifying the degrees with non-zero coefficients.

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.Degrees([3,1,0])
Out[1]: Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2))
```

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$  by specifying the degrees with non-zero coefficients.

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [3]: galois.Poly.Degrees([3,1,0], coeffs=[251,73,185], field=GF)
Out[3]: Poly(251x^3 + 73x + 185, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod Identity(field=<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>)**Constructs the identity polynomial  $f(x) = x$  over  $GF(p^m)$ .**Parameters** `field(galois.FieldClass, optional)` – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `galois.GF2`.**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .**Return type** `galois.Poly`**Examples**Construct the identity polynomial over  $GF(2)$ .

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.Identity()
Out[1]: Poly(x, GF(2))
```

Construct the identity polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$ .

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
```

```
In [3]: galois.Poly.Identity(field=GF)
```

```
Out[3]: Poly(x, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod Integer**(*integer, field=<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>*)

Constructs a polynomial over  $GF(p^m)$  from its integer representation.

The integer value  $i$  represents the polynomial  $f(x) = a_dx^d + a_{d-1}x^{d-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$  over field  $GF(p^m)$  if  $i = a_d(p^m)^d + a_{d-1}(p^m)^{d-1} + \dots + a_1(p^m) + a_0$  using integer arithmetic, not finite field arithmetic.

#### Parameters

- **integer** (`int`) – The integer representation of the polynomial  $f(x)$ .
- **field** (`galois.FieldClass`, *optional*) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `galois.GF2`.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

#### Examples

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2)$  from its integer representation.

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.Integer(5)
```

```
Out[1]: Poly(x^2 + 1, GF(2))
```

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$  from its integer representation.

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
```

```
In [3]: galois.Poly.Integer(13*256**3 + 117, field=GF)
```

```
Out[3]: Poly(13x^3 + 117, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod One**(*field=<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>*)

Constructs the one polynomial  $f(x) = 1$  over  $GF(p^m)$ .

**Parameters field** (`galois.FieldClass`, *optional*) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `galois.GF2`.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

#### Examples

Construct the one polynomial over  $GF(2)$ .

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.One()
```

```
Out[1]: Poly(1, GF(2))
```

Construct the one polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$ .

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
```

```
In [3]: galois.Poly.One(field=GF)
```

```
Out[3]: Poly(1, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod Random(*degree*, *field*=*optional*)**

Constructs a random polynomial over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  with degree *d*.

#### Parameters

- **degree** (*int*) – The degree of the polynomial.
- **field** (*galois.FieldClass*, *optional*) – The field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is *galois.GF2*.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** *galois.Poly*

#### Examples

Construct a random degree-5 polynomial over  $\text{GF}(2)$ .

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.Random(5)
```

```
Out[1]: Poly(x^5, GF(2))
```

Construct a random degree-5 polynomial over  $\text{GF}(2^8)$ .

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
```

```
In [3]: galois.Poly.Random(5, field=GF)
```

```
Out[3]: Poly(116x^5 + 194x^4 + 64x^3 + 18x^2 + 173x + 144, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod Roots(*roots*, *multiplicities*=*None*, *field*=*None*)**

Constructs a monic polynomial in  $\text{GF}(p^m)[x]$  from its roots.

The polynomial  $f(x)$  with *d* roots  $\{r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{d-1}\}$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= (x - r_0)(x - r_1) \dots (x - r_{d-1}) \\ f(x) &= a_d x^d + a_{d-1} x^{d-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \end{aligned}$$

#### Parameters

- **roots** (*array\_like*) – List of roots in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  of the desired polynomial.
- **multiplicities** (*array\_like*, *optional*) – List of multiplicity of each root. The default is *None* which corresponds to all ones.
- **field** (*galois.FieldClass*, *optional*) – The field  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is `None` which represents *galois.GF2*.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** *galois.Poly*

#### Examples

Construct a polynomial over  $\text{GF}(2)$  from a list of its roots.

```
In [1]: roots = [0, 0, 1]
In [2]: p = galois.Poly.Roots(roots); p
Out[2]: Poly(x^3 + x^2, GF(2))
In [3]: p(roots)
Out[3]: GF([0, 0, 0], order=2)
```

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$  from a list of its roots.

```
In [4]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [5]: roots = [121, 198, 225]
In [6]: p = galois.Poly.Roots(roots, field=GF); p
Out[6]: Poly(x^3 + 94x^2 + 174x + 89, GF(2^8))
In [7]: p(roots)
Out[7]: GF([0, 0, 0], order=2^8)
```

**classmethod String**(*string*, *field*=<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>)  
Constructs a polynomial over  $GF(p^m)$  from its string representation.

#### Parameters

- **string** (*str*) – The string representation of the polynomial  $f(x)$ .
- **field** (*galois.FieldClass*, *optional*) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is *galois.GF2*.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** *galois.Poly*

#### Examples

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2)$  from its string representation.

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.String("x^2 + 1")
Out[1]: Poly(x^2 + 1, GF(2))
```

Construct a polynomial over  $GF(2^8)$  from its string representation.

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [3]: galois.Poly.String("13x^3 + 117", field=GF)
Out[3]: Poly(13x^3 + 117, GF(2^8))
```

**classmethod Zero**(*field*=<class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>)  
Constructs the zero polynomial  $f(x) = 0$  over  $GF(p^m)$ .

**Parameters** **field** (*galois.FieldClass*, *optional*) – The field  $GF(p^m)$  the polynomial is over. The default is *galois.GF2*.

**Returns** The polynomial  $f(x)$ .

---

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

### Examples

Construct the zero polynomial over GF(2).

```
In [1]: galois.Poly.Zero()
Out[1]: Poly(0, GF(2))
```

Construct the zero polynomial over GF( $2^8$ ).

```
In [2]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)
In [3]: galois.Poly.Zero(field=GF)
Out[3]: Poly(0, GF(2^8))
```

---

### `derivative(k=1)`

Computes the  $k$ -th formal derivative  $\frac{d^k}{dx^k} f(x)$  of the polynomial  $f(x)$ .

For the polynomial

$$f(x) = a_d x^d + a_{d-1} x^{d-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

the first formal derivative is defined as

$$p'(x) = (d) \cdot a_d x^{d-1} + (d-1) \cdot a_{d-1} x^{d-2} + \cdots + (2) \cdot a_2 x + a_1$$

where  $\cdot$  represents scalar multiplication (repeated addition), not finite field multiplication, e.g.  $3 \cdot a = a + a + a$ .

**Parameters** `k` (`int`, `optional`) – The number of derivatives to compute. 1 corresponds to  $p'(x)$ , 2 corresponds to  $p''(x)$ , etc. The default is 1.

**Returns** The  $k$ -th formal derivative of the polynomial  $f(x)$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

### References

- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Formal\\_derivative](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Formal_derivative)

---

### Examples

Compute the derivatives of a polynomial over GF(2).

```
In [1]: p = galois.Poly.Random(7); p
Out[1]: Poly(x^7 + x^6 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1, GF(2))

In [2]: p.derivative()
Out[2]: Poly(x^6 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

# k derivatives of a polynomial where k is the Galois field's characteristic
# will always result in 0
In [3]: p.derivative(2)
Out[3]: Poly(0, GF(2))
```

Compute the derivatives of a polynomial over GF(7).

```
In [4]: GF = galois.GF(7)

In [5]: p = galois.Poly.Random(11, field=GF); p
Out[5]: Poly(3x^11 + 2x^10 + 6x^9 + 6x^8 + 5x^7 + 6x^6 + 2x^5 + 5x^4 + 4x^3 + 4x^2 + x + 1, GF(7))

In [6]: p.derivative()
Out[6]: Poly(5x^10 + 6x^9 + 5x^8 + 6x^7 + x^5 + 3x^4 + 6x^3 + 5x^2 + x + 1, GF(7))

In [7]: p.derivative(2)
Out[7]: Poly(x^9 + 5x^8 + 5x^7 + 5x^4 + 5x^3 + 4x^2 + 3x + 1, GF(7))

In [8]: p.derivative(3)
Out[8]: Poly(2x^8 + 5x^7 + 6x^3 + x^2 + x + 3, GF(7))

# k derivatives of a polynomial where k is the Galois field's characteristic
# will always result in 0
In [9]: p.derivative(7)
Out[9]: Poly(0, GF(7))
```

Compute the derivatives of a polynomial over GF( $2^8$ ).

```
In [10]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [11]: p = galois.Poly.Random(7, field=GF); p
Out[11]: Poly(145x^7 + 146x^6 + 103x^5 + 255x^4 + 90x^3 + 205x^2 + 95x + 125, GF(2^8))

In [12]: p.derivative()
Out[12]: Poly(145x^6 + 103x^4 + 90x^2 + 95, GF(2^8))

# k derivatives of a polynomial where k is the Galois field's characteristic
# will always result in 0
In [13]: p.derivative(2)
Out[13]: Poly(0, GF(2^8))
```

### `roots(multiplicity=False)`

Calculates the roots  $r$  of the polynomial  $f(x)$ , such that  $f(r) = 0$ .

This implementation uses Chien's search to find the roots  $\{r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{k-1}\}$  of the degree- $d$  polynomial

$$f(x) = a_dx^d + a_{d-1}x^{d-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0,$$

where  $k \leq d$ . Then,  $f(x)$  can be factored as

$$f(x) = (x - r_0)^{m_0}(x - r_1)^{m_1} \dots (x - r_{k-1})^{m_{k-1}},$$

where  $m_i$  is the multiplicity of root  $r_i$  and

$$\sum_{i=0}^{k-1} m_i = d.$$

The Galois field elements can be represented as  $\text{GF}(p^m) = \{0, 1, \alpha, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{p^m-2}\}$ , where  $\alpha$  is a primitive element of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

0 is a root of  $f(x)$  if:

$$a_0 = 0$$

1 is a root of  $f(x)$  if:

$$\sum_{j=0}^d a_j = 0$$

The remaining elements of  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  are powers of  $\alpha$ . The following equations calculate  $p(\alpha^i)$ , where  $\alpha^i$  is a root of  $f(x)$  if  $p(\alpha^i) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} p(\alpha^i) &= a_d(\alpha^i)^d + a_{d-1}(\alpha^i)^{d-1} + \dots + a_1(\alpha^i) + a_0 \\ p(\alpha^i) &\stackrel{\Delta}{=} \lambda_{i,d} + \lambda_{i,d-1} + \dots + \lambda_{i,1} + \lambda_{i,0} \\ p(\alpha^i) &= \sum_{j=0}^d \lambda_{i,j} \end{aligned}$$

The next power of  $\alpha$  can be easily calculated from the previous calculation.

$$\begin{aligned} p(\alpha^{i+1}) &= a_d(\alpha^{i+1})^d + a_{d-1}(\alpha^{i+1})^{d-1} + \dots + a_1(\alpha^{i+1}) + a_0 \\ p(\alpha^{i+1}) &= a_d(\alpha^i)^d \alpha^d + a_{d-1}(\alpha^i)^{d-1} \alpha^{d-1} + \dots + a_1(\alpha^i) \alpha + a_0 \\ p(\alpha^{i+1}) &= \lambda_{i,d} \alpha^d + \lambda_{i,d-1} \alpha^{d-1} + \dots + \lambda_{i,1} \alpha + \lambda_{i,0} \\ p(\alpha^{i+1}) &= \sum_{j=0}^d \lambda_{i,j} \alpha^j \end{aligned}$$

**Parameters** `multiplicity (bool, optional)` – Optionally return the multiplicity of each root. The default is `False`, which only returns the unique roots.

### Returns

- `galois.FieldArray` – Galois field array of roots of  $f(x)$ .
- `np.ndarray` – The multiplicity of each root. Only returned if `multiplicity=True`.

## References

- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chien\\_search](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chien_search)

---

## Examples

Find the roots of a polynomial over  $\text{GF}(2)$ .

```
In [1]: p = galois.Poly.Roots([0]*7 + [1]*13); p
Out[1]: Poly(x^20 + x^19 + x^16 + x^15 + x^12 + x^11 + x^8 + x^7, GF(2))

In [2]: p.roots()
Out[2]: GF([0, 1], order=2)

In [3]: p.roots(multiplicity=True)
Out[3]: (GF([0, 1], order=2), array([ 7, 13]))
```

Find the roots of a polynomial over GF(2<sup>8</sup>).

```
In [4]: GF = galois.GF(2**8)

In [5]: p = galois.Poly.Roots([18,]*7 + [155,]*13 + [227,]*9, field=GF); p
Out[5]: Poly(x^29 + 106x^28 + 27x^27 + 155x^26 + 230x^25 + 38x^24 + 78x^23 + 8x^
    ↪22 + 46x^21 + 210x^20 + 248x^19 + 214x^18 + 172x^17 + 152x^16 + 82x^15 + 237x^
    ↪14 + 172x^13 + 230x^12 + 141x^11 + 63x^10 + 103x^9 + 167x^8 + 199x^7 + 127x^6
    ↪+ 254x^5 + 95x^4 + 93x^3 + 3x^2 + 4x + 208, GF(2^8))

In [6]: p.roots()
Out[6]: GF([ 18, 155, 227], order=2^8)

In [7]: p.roots(multiplicity=True)
Out[7]: (GF([ 18, 155, 227], order=2^8), array([ 7, 13,  9]))
```

---

### property coeffs

The coefficients of the polynomial in degree-descending order. The entries of *galois.Poly.degrees* are paired with *galois.Poly.coeffs*.

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)

In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)

In [3]: p.coeffs
Out[3]: GF([3, 0, 5, 2], order=7)
```

---

Type *galois.FieldArray*

### property degree

The degree of the polynomial, i.e. the highest degree with non-zero coefficient.

---

#### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)

In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)

In [3]: p.degree
Out[3]: 3
```

---

Type *int*

### property degrees

An array of the polynomial degrees in degree-descending order. The entries of *galois.Poly.degrees* are paired with *galois.Poly.coeffs*.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)
In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)
In [3]: p.degrees
Out[3]: array([3, 2, 1, 0])
```

---

**Type** `numpy.ndarray`**property field**

The Galois field array class to which the coefficients belong.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: a = galois.Poly.Random(5); a
Out[1]: Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))

In [2]: a.field
Out[2]: <class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2)'>

In [3]: b = galois.Poly.Random(5, field=galois.GF(2**8)); b
Out[3]: Poly(210x^5 + 208x^4 + 100x^3 + 13x^2 + 22x + 38, GF(2^8))

In [4]: b.field
Out[4]: <class 'numpy.ndarray over GF(2^8)'>
```

---

**Type** `galois.FieldClass`**property integer**

The integer representation of the polynomial. For polynomial  $f(x) = a_dx^d + a_{d-1}x^{d-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$  with elements in  $a_k \in GF(p^m)$ , the integer representation is  $i = a_d(p^m)^d + a_{d-1}(p^m)^{d-1} + \dots + a_1(p^m) + a_0$  (using integer arithmetic, not finite field arithmetic).

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)
In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)
In [3]: p.integer
Out[3]: 1066

In [4]: p.integer == 3*7**3 + 5*7**1 + 2*7**0
Out[4]: True
```

---

**Type** `int`

**property nonzero\_coeffs**

The non-zero coefficients of the polynomial in degree-descending order. The entries of `galois.Poly.nonzero_degrees` are paired with `galois.Poly.nonzero_coeffs`.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)
```

```
In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)
```

```
In [3]: p.nonzero_coeffs
```

```
Out[3]: GF([3, 5, 2], order=7)
```

---

Type `galois.FieldArray`

**property nonzero\_degrees**

An array of the polynomial degrees that have non-zero coefficients, in degree-descending order. The entries of `galois.Poly.nonzero_degrees` are paired with `galois.Poly.nonzero_coeffs`.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)
```

```
In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF)
```

```
In [3]: p.nonzero_degrees
```

```
Out[3]: array([3, 1, 0])
```

---

Type `numpy.ndarray`

**property string**

The string representation of the polynomial, without specifying the Galois field.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(7)
```

```
In [2]: p = galois.Poly([3, 0, 5, 2], field=GF); p
```

```
Out[2]: Poly(3x^3 + 5x + 2, GF(7))
```

```
In [3]: p.string
```

```
Out[3]: '3x^3 + 5x + 2'
```

---

Type `str`

## Polynomial functions

<code>poly_gcd(a, b)</code>	Finds the greatest common divisor of two polynomials $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ over GF( $q$ ).
<code>poly_pow(poly, power, modulus)</code>	Efficiently exponentiates a polynomial $f(x)$ to the power $k$ reducing by modulo $g(x)$ , $f(x)^k \bmod g(x)$ .
<code>poly_factors(poly)</code>	Factors the polynomial $f(x)$ into a product of $n$ irreducible factors $f(x) = g_0(x)^{k_0}g_1(x)^{k_1}\dots g_{n-1}(x)^{k_{n-1}}$ with $k_0 \leq k_1 \leq \dots \leq k_{n-1}$ .

### galois.poly\_gcd

`galois.poly_gcd(a, b)`

Finds the greatest common divisor of two polynomials  $a(x)$  and  $b(x)$  over GF( $q$ ).

This implementation uses the Extended Euclidean Algorithm.

#### Parameters

- `a` (`galois.Poly`) – A polynomial  $a(x)$  over GF( $q$ ).
- `b` (`galois.Poly`) – A polynomial  $b(x)$  over GF( $q$ ).

#### Returns

- `galois.Poly` – Polynomial greatest common divisor of  $a(x)$  and  $b(x)$ .
- `galois.Poly` – Polynomial  $x(x)$ , such that  $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ .
- `galois.Poly` – Polynomial  $y(x)$ , such that  $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ .

### Examples

**In [1]:** `GF = galois.GF(7)`

**In [2]:** `a = galois.Poly.Roots([2,2,2,3,6], field=GF); a`  
**Out[2]:** `Poly(x^5 + 6x^4 + x + 3, GF(7))`

#  $a(x)$  and  $b(x)$  only share the root 2 in common

**In [3]:** `b = galois.Poly.Roots([1,2], field=GF); b`  
**Out[3]:** `Poly(x^2 + 4x + 2, GF(7))`

**In [4]:** `gcd, x, y = galois.poly_gcd(a, b)`

# The GCD has only 2 as a root with multiplicity 1

**In [5]:** `gcd.roots(multiplicity=True)`  
**Out[5]:** `(GF([2], order=7), array([1]))`

**In [6]:** `a*x + b*y == gcd`

**Out[6]:** `True`

## galois.poly\_pow

`galois.poly_pow(poly, power, modulus)`

Efficiently exponentiates a polynomial  $f(x)$  to the power  $k$  reducing by modulo  $g(x)$ ,  $f(x)^k \bmod g(x)$ .

The algorithm is more efficient than exponentiating first and then reducing modulo  $g(x)$ . Instead, this algorithm repeatedly squares  $f(x)$ , reducing modulo  $g(x)$  at each step. This is the polynomial equivalent of `galois.pow()`.

### Parameters

- `poly` (`galois.Poly`) – The polynomial to be exponentiated  $f(x)$ .
- `power` (`int`) – The non-negative exponent  $k$ .
- `modulus` (`galois.Poly`) – The reducing polynomial  $g(x)$ .

**Returns** The resulting polynomial  $h(x) = f^k \bmod g$ .

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: GF = galois.GF(31)

In [2]: f = galois.Poly.Random(10, field=GF); f
Out[2]: Poly(22x^10 + 17x^9 + 18x^7 + 9x^6 + 13x^5 + 5x^4 + 8x^3 + 13x^2 + 9x + 28, GF(31))

In [3]: g = galois.Poly.Random(7, field=GF); g
Out[3]: Poly(10x^7 + 3x^6 + x^5 + 19x^4 + 24x^3 + 4x^2 + 13x + 19, GF(31))

# %timeit f**200 % g
# 1.23 s ± 41.1 ms per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 1 loop each)
In [4]: f**200 % g
Out[4]: Poly(x^6 + 3x^4 + 23x^3 + 15x^2 + 29x + 16, GF(31))

# %timeit galois.poly_pow(f, 200, g)
# 41.7 ms ± 468 µs per loop (mean ± std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)
In [5]: galois.poly_pow(f, 200, g)
Out[5]: Poly(x^6 + 3x^4 + 23x^3 + 15x^2 + 29x + 16, GF(31))
```

---

## galois.poly\_factors

`galois.poly_factors(poly)`

Factors the polynomial  $f(x)$  into a product of  $n$  irreducible factors  $f(x) = g_0(x)^{k_0}g_1(x)^{k_1} \dots g_{n-1}(x)^{k_{n-1}}$  with  $k_0 \leq k_1 \leq \dots \leq k_{n-1}$ .

This function implements the Square-Free Factorization algorithm.

**Parameters** `poly` (`galois.Poly`) – The polynomial  $f(x)$  over  $\text{GF}(p^m)$  to be factored.

### Returns

- `list` – The list of  $n$  polynomial factors  $\{g_0(x), g_1(x), \dots, g_{n-1}(x)\}$ .
- `list` – The list of  $n$  polynomial multiplicities  $\{k_0, k_1, \dots, k_{n-1}\}$ .

## References

- D. Hachenberger, D. Jungnickel. Topics in Galois Fields. Algorithm 6.1.7.

## Examples

**In [1]:** `GF = galois.GF2`

```
# Ensure the factors are irreducible by using Conway polynomials
```

**In [2]:** `g0, g1, g2 = galois.conway_poly(2, 3), galois.conway_poly(2, 4), galois.conway_poly(2, 5)`

**In [3]:** `g0, g1, g2`

**Out[3]:**

```
(Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2)))
```

**In [4]:** `k0, k1, k2 = 2, 3, 4`

```
# Construct the composite polynomial
```

**In [5]:** `f = g0**k0 * g1**k1 * g2**k2`

**In [6]:** `galois.poly_factors(f)`

**Out[6]:**

```
([Poly(x^3 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^4 + x + 1, GF(2)),
 Poly(x^5 + x^2 + 1, GF(2))],
 [2, 3, 4])
```

**In [7]:** `GF = galois.GF(3)`

```
# Ensure the factors are irreducible by using Conway polynomials
```

**In [8]:** `g0, g1, g2 = galois.conway_poly(3, 3), galois.conway_poly(3, 4), galois.conway_poly(3, 5)`

**In [9]:** `g0, g1, g2`

**Out[9]:**

```
(Poly(x^3 + 2x + 1, GF(3)),
 Poly(x^4 + 2x^3 + 2, GF(3)),
 Poly(x^5 + 2x + 1, GF(3)))
```

**In [10]:** `k0, k1, k2 = 3, 4, 6`

```
# Construct the composite polynomial
```

**In [11]:** `f = g0**k0 * g1**k1 * g2**k2`

**In [12]:** `galois.poly_factors(f)`

**Out[12]:**

```
([Poly(x^3 + 2x + 1, GF(3)),
 Poly(x^4 + 2x^3 + 2, GF(3)),
 Poly(x^5 + 2x + 1, GF(3))],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

[3, 4, 6])
------------

## Create specific polynomials

<code>irreducible_poly(characteristic, degree[, ...])</code>	Returns a degree- $m$ irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>irreducible polys(characteristic, degree)</code>	Returns all degree- $m$ irreducible polynomials $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>primitive_poly(characteristic, degree[, method])</code>	Returns a degree- $m$ primitive polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>primitive polys(characteristic, degree)</code>	Returns all degree- $m$ primitive polynomials $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>conway_poly(p, n)</code>	Returns the degree- $n$ Conway polynomial $C_{p,n}$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ .
<code>minimal_poly(element)</code>	Computes the minimal polynomial $m_e(x) \in \text{GF}(p)[x]$ of a Galois field element $e \in \text{GF}(p^m)$ .

## Polynomial tests

<code>is_monic(poly)</code>	Determines whether the polynomial is monic, i.e. having leading coefficient equal to 1.
<code>is_irreducible(poly)</code>	Checks whether the polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ is irreducible.
<code>is_primitive(poly)</code>	Checks whether the polynomial $f(x)$ over $\text{GF}(p)$ is primitive.

### galois.is\_monic

`galois.is_monic(poly)`

Determines whether the polynomial is monic, i.e. having leading coefficient equal to 1.

**Parameters** `poly` (`galois.Poly`) – A polynomial over a Galois field.

**Returns** True if the polynomial is monic.

**Return type** `bool`

### Examples

In [1]:	<code>GF = galois.GF(7)</code>
---------	--------------------------------

In [2]:	<code>p = galois.Poly([1, 0, 4, 5], field=GF); p</code>
Out[2]:	<code>Poly(x^3 + 4x + 5, GF(7))</code>

In [3]:	<code>galois.is_monic(p)</code>
Out[3]:	<code>True</code>

```
In [4]: p = galois.Poly([3,0,4,5], field=GF); p
Out[4]: Poly(3x^3 + 4x + 5, GF(7))
```

```
In [5]: galois.is_monic(p)
Out[5]: False
```

### 6.1.3 Linear Sequences

---

`berlekamp_massey(sequence)`

Finds the minimum-degree polynomial  $c(x)$  that produces the sequence in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

---

#### galois.berlekamp\_massey

`class galois.berlekamp_massey(sequence)`

Finds the minimum-degree polynomial  $c(x)$  that produces the sequence in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

This function implements the Berlekamp-Massey algorithm.

**Parameters** `sequence (galois.FieldArray)` – A sequence of Galois field elements in  $\text{GF}(p^m)$ .

**Returns** The minimum-degree polynomial  $c(x) \in \text{GF}(p^m)(x)$  that produces the input sequence.

**Return type** `galois.Poly`

---

#### Examples

TODO: Add an LFSR example once they're added.

---

### 6.1.4 Forward Error Correcting Codes

#### BCH Codes

---

`BCH(n, k[, primitive_poly, ...])`

Constructs a primitive, narrow-sense binary  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.

---

`bch_valid_codes(n[, t_min])`

Returns a list of  $(n, k, t)$  tuples of valid primitive binary  $\text{BCH}$  codes.

---

`bch_generator_poly(n, k[, c, ...])`

Returns the generator polynomial for the primitive binary  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.

---

`bch_generator_matrix(n, k[, c, ...])`

Returns the generator matrix for the primitive binary  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.

---

**galois.BCH**

```
class galois.BCH(n, k, primitive_poly=None, primitive_element=None, systematic=True)
```

Constructs a primitive, narrow-sense binary  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.

**Parameters**

- **n** (`int`) – The codeword size  $n$ , must be  $n = 2^m - 1$ .
- **k** (`int`) – The message size  $k$ .
- **primitive\_poly** (`int`, `galois.Poly`, `optional`) – Optionally specify the primitive polynomial that defines the extension field  $\text{GF}(2^m)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, i.e. `galois.primitive_poly(2, m, method="smallest")`. The use of the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, as opposed to a Conway polynomial, is the default in textbooks, Matlab, and Octave.
- **primitive\_element** (`int`, `galois.Poly`, `optional`) – Optionally specify the primitive element  $\alpha$  whose powers are roots of the generator polynomial  $g(x)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive element in  $\text{GF}(2^m)$ , i.e. `galois.primitive_element(2, m)`.
- **systematic** (`bool`, `optional`) – Optionally specify if the encoding should be systematic, meaning the codeword is the message with parity appended. The default is `True`.

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.bch_valid_codes(15)
Out[1]: [(15, 11, 1), (15, 7, 2), (15, 5, 3)]
```

```
In [2]: bch = galois.BCH(15, 7)
```

```
In [3]: m = galois.GF2.Random(bch.k); m
Out[3]: GF([0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0], order=2)
```

```
In [4]: c = bch.encode(m); c
Out[4]: GF([0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0], order=2)

# Corrupt the first bit in the codeword
In [5]: c[0] ^= 1
```

```
In [6]: dec_m = bch.decode(c); dec_m
Out[6]: GF([0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0], order=2)
```

```
In [7]: np.array_equal(dec_m, m)
Out[7]: True
```

```
# Instruct the decoder to return the number of corrected bit errors
In [8]: dec_m, N = bch.decode(c, errors=True); dec_m, N
Out[8]: (GF([0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0], order=2), 1)
```

```
In [9]: np.array_equal(dec_m, m)
Out[9]: True
```

## Constructors

---

## Methods

<code>decode(codeword[, errors])</code>	Decodes the BCH codeword into its message.
<code>encode(message[, parity_only])</code>	Encodes the message into a BCH codeword.

## Attributes

<code>G</code>	The generator matrix $G$ with shape $(k, n)$ .
<code>H</code>	The parity-check matrix $H$ with shape $(n - k, n)$ .
<code>field</code>	The Galois field $\text{GF}(2^m)$ that defines the BCH code.
<code>generator_poly</code>	The generator polynomial $g(x)$ whose roots are <code>BCH.roots</code> .
<code>is_narrow_sense</code>	Indicates if the BCH code is narrow sense, meaning the roots of the generator polynomial are consecutive powers of $\alpha$ starting at 1, i.e. $\alpha, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{2*t-1}$ .
<code>is_primitive</code>	Indicates if the BCH code is primitive, meaning $n = 2^m - 1$ .
<code>k</code>	The message size $k$ of the $\text{BCH}(n, k)$ code.
<code>n</code>	The codeword size $n$ of the $\text{BCH}(n, k)$ code.
<code>roots</code>	The roots of the generator polynomial.
<code>systematic</code>	Indicates if the code is configured to return codewords in systematic form.
<code>t</code>	The error-correcting capability of the code.

`decode(codeword, errors=False)`

Decodes the BCH codeword into its message.

### Parameters

- `codeword (np.ndarray, galois.FieldArray)` – The codeword as either a  $n$ -length vector or  $(N, n)$  matrix, where  $N$  is the number of codewords.
- `errors (bool, optional)` – Optionally specify whether to return the number of corrected errors.

### Returns

- `np.ndarray, galois.FieldArray` – The decoded message as either a  $k$ -length vector or  $(N, k)$  matrix.
- `int, np.ndarray` – Optional return argument of the number of corrected bit errors as either a scalar or  $n$ -length vector. Valid number of corrections are in  $[0, t]$ . If a codeword has too many errors and cannot be corrected, -1 will be returned.

---

## Examples

```
In [1]: bch = galois.BCH(15, 7)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [2]: m = galois.GF2.Random(bch.k); m
Out[2]: GF([1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0], order=2)

In [3]: c = bch.encode(m); c
Out[3]: GF([1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0], order=2)

# Corrupt the first bit in the codeword
In [4]: c[0] ^= 1

In [5]: dec_m = bch.decode(c); dec_m
Out[5]: GF([1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0], order=2)

In [6]: np.array_equal(dec_m, m)
Out[6]: True

# Instruct the decoder to return the number of corrected bit errors
In [7]: dec_m, N = bch.decode(c, errors=True); dec_m, N
Out[7]: (GF([1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0], order=2), 1)

In [8]: np.array_equal(dec_m, m)
Out[8]: True
```

```
In [9]: bch = galois.BCH(15, 7)

In [10]: m = galois.GF2.Random((5, bch.k)); m
Out[10]:
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1],
 [0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1],
 [1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1],
 [1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1],
 [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)

In [11]: c = bch.encode(m); c
Out[11]:
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1],
 [0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1],
 [1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1],
 [1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1],
 [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1]], order=2)

# Corrupt the first bit in the codeword
In [12]: c[:,0] ^= 1

In [13]: dec_m = bch.decode(c); dec_m
Out[13]:
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1],
 [0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1],
 [1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1],
 [1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1],
 [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)

In [14]: np.array_equal(dec_m, m)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

**Out[14]:** True

# Instruct the decoder to return the number of corrected bit errors

**In [15]:** dec\_m, N = bch.decode(c, errors=True); dec\_m, N**Out[15]:**

```
(GF([[1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1],
     [0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0],
     [1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1],
     [1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0],
     [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1]], order=2),
array([1, 1, 1, 1, 1]))
```

**In [16]:** np.array\_equal(dec\_m, m)**Out[16]:** True**encode(*message*, *parity\_only=False*)**

Encodes the message into a BCH codeword.

**Parameters**

- **message** (*np.ndarray*, *galois.FieldArray*) – The message as either a  $k$ -length vector or  $(N, k)$  matrix, where  $N$  is the number of messages.
- **parity\_only** (*bool*, *optional*) – Optionally specify whether to return only the parity bits. This only applies to systematic codes. The default is *False*.

**Returns** The codeword as either a  $n$ -length vector or  $(N, n)$  matrix. The return type matches the message type. If *parity\_only=True*, the parity bits are either a  $n - k$ -length vector or  $(N, n - k)$  matrix.

**Return type** *np.ndarray*, *galois.FieldArray*

**Examples****In [1]:** bch = galois.BCH(15, 7)**In [2]:** m = galois.GF2.Random(bch.k); m**Out[2]:** GF([1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1], order=2)**In [3]:** c = bch.encode(m); c**Out[3]:** GF([1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1], order=2)**In [4]:** p = bch.encode(m, parity\_only=True); p**Out[4]:** GF([1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1], order=2)**In [5]:** bch = galois.BCH(15, 7)**In [6]:** m = galois.GF2.Random((5, bch.k)); m**Out[6]:**

```
GF([[0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0],
    [1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1], order=2)

In [7]: c = bch.encode(m); c
Out[7]:
GF([[0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1],
    [1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1]], order=2)

In [8]: p = bch.encode(m, parity_only=True); p
Out[8]:
GF([[1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1],
    [1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0],
    [0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0],
    [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1]], order=2)
```

**property G**The generator matrix  $G$  with shape  $(k, n)$ .**Type** `galois.GF2`**property H**The parity-check matrix  $H$  with shape  $(n - k, n)$ .**Type** `galois.FieldArray`**property field**The Galois field  $\text{GF}(2^m)$  that defines the BCH code.**Type** `galois.FieldClass`**property generator\_poly**The generator polynomial  $g(x)$  whose roots are `BCH.roots`.**Type** `galois.Poly`**property is\_narrow\_sense**Indicates if the BCH code is narrow sense, meaning the roots of the generator polynomial are consecutive powers of  $\alpha$  starting at 1, i.e.  $\alpha, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{2^{st}-1}$ .**Type** `bool`**property is\_primitive**Indicates if the BCH code is primitive, meaning  $n = 2^m - 1$ .**Type** `bool`**property k**The message size  $k$  of the  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.**Type** `int`**property n**The codeword size  $n$  of the  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.**Type** `int`

**property roots**

The roots of the generator polynomial. These are consecutive powers of  $\alpha$ .

**Type** `galois.FieldArray`

**property systematic**

Indicates if the code is configured to return codewords in systematic form.

**Type** `bool`

**property t**

The error-correcting capability of the code. The code can correct  $t$  bit errors in a codeword.

**Type** `int`

**galois.bch\_valid\_codes**

**class** `galois.bch_valid_codes(n, t_min=1)`

Returns a list of  $(n, k, t)$  tuples of valid primitive binary BCH codes.

**Parameters**

- **n** (`int`) – The codeword size  $n$ , must be  $n = 2^m - 1$ .
- **t\_min** (`int`, *optional*) – The minimum error-correcting capability. The default is 1.

**Returns** A list of  $(n, k, t)$  tuples of valid primitive BCH codes.

**Return type** `list`

**Examples**

**In [1]:** `galois.bch_valid_codes(31)`

**Out[1]:** `[(31, 26, 1), (31, 21, 2), (31, 16, 3), (31, 11, 5), (31, 6, 7)]`

**In [2]:** `galois.bch_valid_codes(31, t_min=3)`

**Out[2]:** `[(31, 16, 3), (31, 11, 5), (31, 6, 7)]`

**galois.bch\_generator\_poly**

**class** `galois.bch_generator_poly(n, k, c=1, primitive_poly=None, primitive_element=None)`

Returns the generator polynomial for the primitive binary  $\text{BCH}(n, k)$  code.

The BCH generator polynomial  $g(x)$  is defined as  $g(x) = \text{LCM}(m_c(x), m_{c+1}(x), \dots, m_{c+2t-2}(x))$ , where  $m_c(x)$  is the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha^c$  where  $\alpha$  is a primitive element of  $\text{GF}(2^m)$ . If  $c = 1$ , then the code is said to be *narrow-sense*.

**Parameters**

- **n** (`int`) – The codeword size  $n$ , must be  $n = 2^m - 1$ .
- **k** (`int`) – The message size  $k$ .
- **c** (`int`, *optional*) – The first consecutive power of  $\alpha$ . The default is 1.
- **primitive\_poly** (`galois.Poly`, *optional*) – Optionally specify the primitive polynomial that defines the extension field  $\text{GF}(2^m)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, i.e. `galois.primitive_poly(2, m, method="smallest")`. The use of the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, as

opposed to a Conway polynomial, is most common for the default in textbooks, Matlab, and Octave.

- **primitive\_element** (*int*, *galois.Poly*, *optional*) – Optionally specify the primitive element  $\alpha$  whose powers are roots of the generator polynomial  $g(x)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive element in  $GF(2^m)$ , i.e. `galois.primitive_element(2, m)`.

**Returns** The generator polynomial  $g(x)$ .

**Return type** *galois.Poly*

**Raises** `ValueError` – If the  $BCH(n, k)$  code does not exist.

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: g = galois.bch_generator_poly(15, 7); g
Out[1]: Poly(x^8 + x^7 + x^6 + x^4 + 1, GF(2))
```

---

## galois.bch\_generator\_matrix

```
class galois.bch_generator_matrix(n, k, c=1, primitive_poly=None, primitive_element=None,
                                  systematic=True)
```

Returns the generator matrix for the primitive binary  $BCH(n, k)$  code.

### Parameters

- **n** (*int*) – The codeword size  $n$ , must be  $n = 2^m - 1$ .
- **k** (*int*) – The message size  $k$ .
- **c** (*int*, *optional*) – The first consecutive power of  $\alpha$ . The default is 1.
- **primitive\_poly** (*galois.Poly*, *optional*) – Optionally specify the primitive polynomial that defines the extension field  $GF(2^m)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, i.e. `galois.primitive_poly(2, m, method="smallest")`. The use of the lexicographically-smallest primitive polynomial, as opposed to a Conway polynomial, is most common for the default in textbooks, Matlab, and Octave.
- **primitive\_element** (*int*, *galois.Poly*, *optional*) – Optionally specify the primitive element  $\alpha$  whose powers are roots of the generator polynomial  $g(x)$ . The default is `None` which uses the lexicographically-smallest primitive element in  $GF(2^m)$ , i.e. `galois.primitive_element(2, m)`.
- **systematic** (*bool*, *optional*) – Optionally specify if the encoding should be systematic, meaning the codeword is the message with parity appended. The default is `True`.

**Returns** The  $(n, k)$  generator matrix  $G$ , such that given a message  $m$ , a codeword is defined by  $c = mG$ .

**Return type** *galois.FieldArray*

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.bch_generator_matrix(15, 7)
Out[1]:
GF([[1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)

In [2]: galois.bch_generator_matrix(15, 7, systematic=False)
Out[2]:
GF([[1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0],
    [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1]], order=2)
```

## 6.1.5 Modular Arithmetic

<code>gcd(a, b)</code>	Finds the integer multiplicands of $a$ and $b$ such that $ax + by = \text{gcd}(a, b)$ .
<code>lcm(*integers)</code>	Computes the least common multiple of the integer arguments.
<code>crt(a, m)</code>	Solves the simultaneous system of congruences for $x$ .
<code>isqrt(n)</code>	Computes the integer square root of $n$ such that $\text{isqrt}(n)^2 \leq n$ .
<code>iroot(n, k)</code>	Finds the integer $k$ -th root $x$ of $n$ , such that $x^k \leq n$ .
<code>ilog(n, b)</code>	Finds the integer $\log_b(n) = k$ , such that $b^k \leq n$ .
<code>pow(base, exp, mod)</code>	Efficiently exponentiates an integer $a^k \pmod{m}$ .
<code>is_cyclic(n)</code>	Determines whether the multiplicative group $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$ is cyclic.
<code>carmichael(n)</code>	Finds the smallest positive integer $m$ such that $a^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ for every integer $a$ in $1 \leq a < n$ that is coprime to $n$ .
<code>euler_totient(n)</code>	Counts the positive integers (totatives) in $1 \leq k < n$ that are relatively prime to $n$ , i.e. $\text{gcd}(n, k) = 1$ .
<code>totatives(n)</code>	Returns the positive integers (totatives) in $1 \leq k < n$ that are coprime with $n$ , i.e. $\text{gcd}(n, k) = 1$ .

**galois.gcd****class galois.gcd(a, b)**Finds the integer multiplicands of  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ .

This function implements the Extended Euclidean Algorithm.

**Parameters**

- **a** (`int`) – Any integer.
- **b** (`int`) – Any integer.

**Returns**

- *int* – Greatest common divisor of  $a$  and  $b$ .
- *int* – Integer  $x$ , such that  $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ .
- *int* – Integer  $y$ , such that  $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ .

**References**

- T. Moon, “Error Correction Coding”, Section 5.2.2: The Euclidean Algorithm and Euclidean Domains, p. 181
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euclidean\\_algorithm#Extended\\_Euclidean\\_algorithm](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euclidean_algorithm#Extended_Euclidean_algorithm)

---

**Examples****In [1]:** `a = 2`**In [2]:** `b = 13`**In [3]:** `gcd, x, y = galois.gcd(a, b)`**In [4]:** `gcd, x, y`**Out[4]:** `(1, -6, 1)`**In [5]:** `a*x + b*y == gcd`**Out[5]:** `True`

---

**galois.lcm****class galois.lcm(\*integers)**

Computes the least common multiple of the integer arguments.

---

**Note:** This function is included for Python versions before 3.9. For Python 3.9 and later, this function calls `math.lcm()` from the standard library.**Returns** The least common multiple of the integer arguments. If any argument is 0, the LCM is 0. If no arguments are provided, 1 is returned.**Return type** `int`

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.lcm()
Out[1]: 1

In [2]: galois.lcm(2, 4, 14)
Out[2]: 28

In [3]: galois.lcm(3, 0, 9)
Out[3]: 0
```

This function also works on arbitrarily-large integers.

```
In [4]: prime1, prime2 = galois.mersenne_primes(100)[-2:]

In [5]: prime1, prime2
Out[5]: (2305843009213693951, 618970019642690137449562111)

In [6]: lcm = galois.lcm(prime1, prime2); lcm
Out[6]: 1427247692705959880439315947500961989719490561

In [7]: lcm == prime1 * prime2
Out[7]: True
```

---

**galois.crt**

**class** `galois.crt(a, m)`

Solves the simultaneous system of congruences for  $x$ .

This function implements the Chinese Remainder Theorem.

$$\begin{aligned}x &\equiv a_1 \pmod{m_1} \\x &\equiv a_2 \pmod{m_2} \\&\vdots \\x &\equiv a_n \pmod{m_n}\end{aligned}$$

**Parameters**

- `a (array_like)` – The integer remainders  $a_i$ .
- `m (array_like)` – The integer modulii  $m_i$ .

**Returns** The simultaneous solution  $x$  to the system of congruences.

**Return type** `int`

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: a = [0, 3, 4]
In [2]: m = [3, 4, 5]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [3]: x = galois.crt(a, m); x
Out[3]: 39

In [4]: for i in range(len(a)):
...:     ai = x % m[i]
...:     print(f"{x} = {ai} (mod {m[i]}), Valid congruence: {ai == a[i]}")
...
39 = 0 (mod 3), Valid congruence: True
39 = 3 (mod 4), Valid congruence: True
39 = 4 (mod 5), Valid congruence: True
```

**galois.isqrt****class galois.isqrt(*n*)**Computes the integer square root of *n* such that  $\text{isqrt}(n)^2 \leq n$ .

**Note:** This function is included for Python versions before 3.8. For Python 3.8 and later, this function calls [math.isqrt\(\)](#) from the standard library.

**Parameters** ***n*** ([int](#)) – A non-negative integer.

**Returns** The integer square root of *n* such that  $\text{isqrt}(n)^2 \leq n$ .

**Return type** [int](#)

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.isqrt(27**2 - 1)
Out[1]: 26

In [2]: galois.isqrt(27**2)
Out[2]: 27

In [3]: galois.isqrt(27**2 + 1)
Out[3]: 27
```

**galois.iroot****class galois.iroot(*n, k*)**Finds the integer *k*-th root *x* of *n*, such that  $x^k \leq n$ .

**Parameters**

- ***n*** ([int](#)) – A positive integer.
- ***k*** ([int](#)) – The root *k*, must be at least 2.

**Returns** The integer *k*-th root *x* of *n*, such that  $x^k \leq n$

---

**Return type** int

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.iroot(27**5 - 1, 5)
Out[1]: 26

In [2]: galois.iroot(27**5, 5)
Out[2]: 27

In [3]: galois.iroot(27**5 + 1, 5)
Out[3]: 27
```

---

## galois.ilog

**class** galois.ilog(*n, b*)

Finds the integer  $\log_b(n) = k$ , such that  $b^k \leq n$ .

**Parameters**

- **n** (*int*) – A positive integer.
- **b** (*int*) – The logarithm base *b*.

**Returns** The integer  $\log_b(n) = k$ , such that  $b^k \leq n$ .

**Return type** int

---

**Examples**

```
In [1]: galois.ilog(27**5 - 1, 27)
Out[1]: 4

In [2]: galois.ilog(27**5, 27)
Out[2]: 5

In [3]: galois.ilog(27**5 + 1, 27)
Out[3]: 5
```

---

## galois.pow

**class** galois.pow(*base, exp, mod*)

Efficiently exponentiates an integer  $a^k \pmod{m}$ .

The algorithm is more efficient than exponentiating first and then reducing modulo *m*. This is the integer equivalent of *galois.poly\_pow()*.

---

**Note:** This function is an alias of *pow()* in the standard library.

---

**Parameters**

- **base** (*int*) – The integer base  $a$ .
- **exp** (*int*) – The integer exponent  $k$ .
- **mod** (*int*) – The integer modulus  $m$ .

**Returns** The modular exponentiation  $a^k \pmod{m}$ .

**Return type** *int*

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.pow(3, 5, 7)
Out[1]: 5
```

```
In [2]: (3**5) % 7
Out[2]: 5
```

## galois.is\_cyclic

```
class galois.is_cyclic(n)
```

Determines whether the multiplicative group  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  is cyclic.

The multiplicative group  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  is the set of positive integers  $1 \leq a < n$  that are coprime with  $n$ .  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  being cyclic means that some primitive root of  $n$ , or generator,  $g$  can generate the group  $\{g^0, g^1, g^2, \dots, g^{\phi(n)-1}\}$ , where  $\phi(n)$  is Euler's totient function and calculates the order of the group. If  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  is cyclic, the number of primitive roots is found by  $\phi(\phi(n))$ .

$(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  is *cyclic* if and only if  $n$  is  $2, 4, p^k$ , or  $2p^k$ , where  $p$  is an odd prime and  $k$  is a positive integer.

**Parameters** **n** (*int*) – A positive integer.

**Returns** True if the multiplicative group  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  is cyclic.

**Return type** *bool*

### Examples

The elements of  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^\times$  are the positive integers less than  $n$  that are coprime with  $n$ . For example,  $(\mathbb{Z}/14\mathbb{Z})^\times = \{1, 3, 5, 9, 11, 13\}$ .

```
# n is of type 2*p^k, which is cyclic
In [1]: n = 14

In [2]: galois.is_cyclic(n)
Out[2]: True

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [3]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[3]: {1, 3, 5, 9, 11, 13}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [4]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[4]: 6
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [5]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[5]: True

# The primitive roots are the elements in Znx that multiplicatively generate the group
In [6]: for a in Znx:
...:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
...:     primitive_root = span == Znx
...:     print("Element: {:2d}, Span: {:<20}, Primitive root: {}".format(a, str(span), primitive_root))
...:
Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 3, Span: {1, 3, 5, 9, 11, 13}, Primitive root: True
Element: 5, Span: {1, 3, 5, 9, 11, 13}, Primitive root: True
Element: 9, Span: {9, 11, 1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 11, Span: {9, 11, 1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 13, Span: {1, 13} , Primitive root: False

In [7]: roots = galois.primitive_roots(n); roots
Out[7]: [3, 5]

# Euler's totient function phi(phi(n)) counts the primitive roots of n
In [8]: len(roots) == galois.euler_totient(phi)
Out[8]: True
```

A counterexample is  $n = 15 = 3 * 5$ , which doesn't fit the condition for cyclicity.  $(\mathbb{Z}/15\mathbb{Z})^\times = \{1, 2, 4, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14\}$ .

```
# n is of type p1^k1 * p2^k2, which is not cyclic
In [9]: n = 15

In [10]: galois.is_cyclic(n)
Out[10]: False

# The congruence class coprime with n
In [11]: Znx = set([a for a in range(1, n) if math.gcd(n, a) == 1]); Znx
Out[11]: {1, 2, 4, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14}

# Euler's totient function counts the "totatives", positive integers coprime with n
In [12]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[12]: 8

In [13]: len(Znx) == phi
Out[13]: True

# The primitive roots are the elements in Znx that multiplicatively generate the group
In [14]: for a in Znx:
...:     span = set([pow(a, i, n) for i in range(1, phi + 1)])
...:     primitive_root = span == Znx
...:     print("Element: {:2d}, Span: {:<13}, Primitive root: {}".format(a, str(span), primitive_root))
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
....:
Element: 1, Span: {1} , Primitive root: False
Element: 2, Span: {8, 1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 4, Span: {1, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 7, Span: {1, 4, 13, 7}, Primitive root: False
Element: 8, Span: {8, 1, 2, 4} , Primitive root: False
Element: 11, Span: {1, 11} , Primitive root: False
Element: 13, Span: {1, 4, 13, 7}, Primitive root: False
Element: 14, Span: {1, 14} , Primitive root: False

In [15]: roots = galois.primitive_roots(n); roots
Out[15]: []

# Note the max order of any element is 4, not 8, which is Carmichael's lambda
# function
In [16]: galois.carmichael(n)
Out[16]: 4
```

## galois.carmichael

```
class galois.carmichael(n)
```

Finds the smallest positive integer  $m$  such that  $a^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  for every integer  $a$  in  $1 \leq a < n$  that is coprime to  $n$ .

Implements the Carmichael function  $\lambda(n)$ .

**Parameters** `n` (`int`) – A positive integer.

**Returns** The smallest positive integer  $m$  such that  $a^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  for every  $a$  in  $1 \leq a < n$  that is coprime to  $n$ .

**Return type** `int`

## References

- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Carmichael\\_function](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Carmichael_function)
- <https://oeis.org/A002322>

## Examples

```
In [1]: n = 20

In [2]: lambda_ = galois.carmichael(n); lambda_
Out[2]: 4

# Find the totatives that are relatively coprime with n
In [3]: totatives = [i for i in range(n) if math.gcd(i, n) == 1]; totatives
Out[3]: [1, 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 19]

In [4]: for a in totatives:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

...:     result = pow(a, lambda_, n)
...:     print("{}^{} = {} (mod {})".format(a, lambda_, result, n))
...:
1^4 = 1 (mod 20)
3^4 = 1 (mod 20)
7^4 = 1 (mod 20)
9^4 = 1 (mod 20)
11^4 = 1 (mod 20)
13^4 = 1 (mod 20)
17^4 = 1 (mod 20)
19^4 = 1 (mod 20)

# For prime n, phi and lambda are always n-1
In [5]: galois.euler_totient(13), galois.carmichael(13)
Out[5]: (12, 12)

```

## galois.euler\_totient

**class galois.euler\_totient(*n*)**Counts the positive integers (totatives) in  $1 \leq k < n$  that are relatively prime to  $n$ , i.e.  $\gcd(n, k) = 1$ .Implements the Euler Totient function  $\phi(n)$ .**Parameters** ***n*** (*int*) – A positive integer.**Returns** The number of totatives that are relatively prime to  $n$ .**Return type** *int*

## References

- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euler%27s\\_totient\\_function](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euler%27s_totient_function)
- <https://oeis.org/A000010>

## Examples

**In [1]:** *n* = 20**In [2]:** phi = galois.euler\_totient(*n*); phi  
**Out[2]:** 8# Find the totatives that are coprime with n  
**In [3]:** totatives = [k for k in range(*n*) if math.gcd(k, *n*) == 1]; totatives  
**Out[3]:** [1, 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 19]# The number of totatives is phi  
**In [4]:** len(totatives) == phi  
**Out[4]:** True# For prime *n*, phi is always *n*-1

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
In [5]: galois.euler_totient(13)
Out[5]: 12
```

## galois.totatives

```
class galois.totatives(n)
```

Returns the positive integers (totatives) in  $1 \leq k < n$  that are coprime with  $n$ , i.e.  $\gcd(n, k) = 1$ .

The totatives of  $n$  form the multiplicative group  $\mathbb{Z}_n^\times$ .

**Parameters** `n` (`int`) – A positive integer.

**Returns** The totatives of  $n$ .

**Return type** `list`

## References

- <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Totative>
- <https://oeis.org/A000010>

---

## Examples

```
In [1]: n = 20

In [2]: totatives = galois.totatives(n); totatives
Out[2]: [1, 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 19]

In [3]: phi = galois.euler_totient(n); phi
Out[3]: 8

In [4]: len(totatives) == phi
Out[4]: True
```

---

## 6.1.6 Discrete Logarithms

---

`log_naive(beta, alpha, modulus)`

Computes the discrete logarithm  $x = \log_\alpha(\beta) \pmod{m}$ .

---

**galois.log\_naive**

```
class galois.log_naive(beta, alpha, modulus)
    Computes the discrete logarithm  $x = \log_\alpha(\beta) \pmod{m}$ .
```

This function implements the naive algorithm. It is included for testing and reference.

**Parameters**

- **beta** (*int*) – The integer  $\beta$  to compute the logarithm of.
- **alpha** (*int*) – The base  $\alpha$ .
- **modulus** (*int*) – The modulus  $m$ .

**Examples**

```
In [1]: N = 17
```

```
In [2]: galois.totatives(N)
```

```
Out[2]: [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16]
```

```
In [3]: galois.primitive_roots(N)
```

```
Out[3]: [3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 14]
```

```
In [4]: x = galois.log_naive(3, 7, N); x
```

```
Out[4]: 3
```

```
In [5]: 7**x % N
```

```
Out[5]: 3
```

```
In [6]: N = 18
```

```
In [7]: galois.totatives(N)
```

```
Out[7]: [1, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17]
```

```
In [8]: galois.primitive_roots(N)
```

```
Out[8]: [5, 11]
```

```
In [9]: x = galois.log_naive(11, 5, N); x
```

```
Out[9]: 5
```

```
In [10]: 5**x % N
```

```
Out[10]: 11
```

### 6.1.7 Primes

#### Prime numbers

<code>primes(n)</code>	Returns all primes $p$ for $p \leq n$ .
<code>kth_prime(k)</code>	Returns the $k$ -th prime.
<code>prev_prime(n)</code>	Returns the nearest prime $p$ , such that $p \leq n$ .
<code>next_prime(n)</code>	Returns the nearest prime $p$ , such that $p > n$ .
<code>random_prime(bits)</code>	Returns a random prime $p$ with $b$ bits, such that $2^b \leq p < 2^{b+1}$ .
<code>mersenne_exponents([n])</code>	Returns all known Mersenne exponents $e$ for $e \leq n$ .
<code>mersenne_primes([n])</code>	Returns all known Mersenne primes $p$ for $p \leq 2^n - 1$ .

#### galois.primes

`galois.primes(n)`

Returns all primes  $p$  for  $p \leq n$ .

**Parameters** `n` (`int`) – A positive integer.

**Returns** The primes up to and including  $n$ .

**Return type** `list`

#### References

- <https://oeis.org/A000040>

---

#### Examples

**In [1]:** `galois.primes(19)`

**Out[1]:** `[2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19]`

---

#### galois.kth\_prime

`galois.kth_prime(k)`

Returns the  $k$ -th prime.

**Parameters** `k` (`int`) – The prime index, where  $k = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$  for primes  $p = \{2, 3, 5, 7, \dots\}$ .

**Returns** The  $k$ -th prime.

**Return type** `int`

---

#### Examples

**In [1]:** `galois.kth_prime(1)`

**Out[1]:** `2`

**In [2]:** `galois.kth_prime(3)`

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Out[2]: 5  
In [3]: galois.kth_prime(1000)  
Out[3]: 7919
```

## galois.prev\_prime

galois.prev\_prime(*n*)

Returns the nearest prime *p*, such that  $p \leq n$ .

**Parameters** **n** (*int*) – A positive integer.

**Returns** The nearest prime  $p \leq n$ .

**Return type** *int*

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.prev_prime(13)  
Out[1]: 13  
  
In [2]: galois.prev_prime(15)  
Out[2]: 13
```

---

## galois.next\_prime

galois.next\_prime(*n*)

Returns the nearest prime *p*, such that  $p > n$ .

**Parameters** **n** (*int*) – A positive integer.

**Returns** The nearest prime  $p > n$ .

**Return type** *int*

---

### Examples

```
In [1]: galois.next_prime(13)  
Out[1]: 17  
  
In [2]: galois.next_prime(15)  
Out[2]: 17
```

## galois.random\_prime

galois.random\_prime(*bits*)

Returns a random prime  $p$  with  $b$  bits, such that  $2^b \leq p < 2^{b+1}$ .

This function randomly generates integers with  $b$  bits and uses the primality tests in `galois.is_prime()` to determine if  $p$  is prime.

**Parameters** `bits` (*int*) – The number of bits in the prime  $p$ .

**Returns** A random prime in  $2^b \leq p < 2^{b+1}$ .

**Return type** `int`

## References

- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prime\\_number\\_theorem](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prime_number_theorem)

---

## Examples

Generate a random 1024-bit prime.

```
In [1]: p = galois.random_prime(1024); p
```

```
Out[1]:
```

```
→ 1812026443654376671081453070648257784255627054273909821717508809756383557610534295243431967603389
```

```
In [2]: galois.is_prime(p)
```

```
Out[2]: True
```

```
$ openssl prime
```

```
→ 2368617879269573822069968860872145920297525240780263923589368444796674235708331161265069278787731
```

```
1514D68EDB7C650F1FF713531A1A43255A4BE6D66EE1FDDBD96F4EB32757C1B1BAF16A5933E24D45FAD6C6A814F3C8C14F30
```

```
→ (2368617879269573822069968860872145920297525240780263923589368444796674235708331161265069278787731
```

```
→ is prime
```

## galois.mersenne\_exponents

galois.mersenne\_exponents(*n=None*)

Returns all known Mersenne exponents  $e$  for  $e \leq n$ .

A Mersenne exponent  $e$  is an exponent of 2 such that  $2^e - 1$  is prime.

**Parameters** `n` (*int*, *optional*) – The max exponent of 2. The default is `None` which returns all known Mersenne exponents.

**Returns** The list of Mersenne exponents  $e$  for  $e \leq n$ .

**Return type** `list`

## References

- <https://oeis.org/A000043>

## Examples

```
# List all Mersenne exponents for Mersenne primes up to 2000 bits
In [1]: e = galois.mersenne_exponents(2000); e
Out[1]: [2, 3, 5, 7, 13, 17, 19, 31, 61, 89, 107, 127, 521, 607, 1279]

# Select one Merseene exponent and compute its Mersenne prime
In [2]: p = 2**e[-1] - 1; p
Out[2]: 1040793219466439908192524032736408553861526224726670480531911235040360805967336029801223944173232

In [3]: galois.is_prime(p)
Out[3]: True
```

## galois.mersenne\_primes

`galois.mersenne_primes(n=None)`

Returns all known Mersenne primes  $p$  for  $p \leq 2^n - 1$ .

Mersenne primes are primes that are one less than a power of 2.

**Parameters** `n` (*int*, *optional*) – The max power of 2. The default is `None` which returns all known Mersenne exponents.

**Returns** The list of known Mersenne primes  $p$  for  $p \leq 2^n - 1$ .

**Return type** `list`

## References

- <https://oeis.org/A000668>

## Examples

```
# List all Mersenne primes up to 2000 bits
In [1]: p = galois.mersenne_primes(2000); p
Out[1]:
[3,
 7,
 31,
 127,
 8191,
 131071,
 524287,
 2147483647,
 2305843009213693951,
 618970019642690137449562111,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

162259276829213363391578010288127,  
170141183460469231731687303715884105727,  
→  
→ 686479766013060971498190079908139321726943530014330540939446345918554318339765605212255964066145  
→  
→ 531137992816767098689588206552468627329593117727031923199444138200403559860852242739162502265229  
→  
→ 104079321946643990819252403273640855386152622472667048053191123504036080596733602980122394417323

In [2]: galois.is\_prime(p[-1])

**Out[2]:** True

## Primality tests

<code>is_prime(n)</code>	Determines if $n$ is prime.
<code>is_prime_fermat(n)</code>	Determines if $n$ is composite.
<code>is_prime_miller_rabin(n[, a, rounds])</code>	Determines if $n$ is composite.

## galois.is\_prime

`galois.is_prime(n)`

Determines if  $n$  is prime.

This algorithm will first run Fermat's primality test to check  $n$  for compositeness, see [galois.is\\_prime\\_fermat](#). If it determines  $n$  is composite, the function will quickly return. If Fermat's primality test returns True, then  $n$  could be prime or pseudoprime. If so, then the algorithm will run seven rounds of Miller-Rabin's primality test, see [galois.is\\_prime\\_miller\\_rabin](#). With this many rounds, a result of True should have high probability of  $n$  being a true prime, not a pseudoprime.

**Parameters** `n` (*int*) – A positive integer.

**Returns** True if the integer  $n$  is prime.

**Return type** bool

## Examples

```
In [1]: galois.is_prime(13)
```

**Out[1]:** True

In [2]: galois.is\_prime(15)

**Out[2]:** False

The algorithm is also efficient on very large  $n$ .

```
In [3]: galois.is_prime(1000000000000000035000061)
```

**Out[3]:** True

## galois.is\_prime\_fermat

`galois.is_prime_fermat(n)`

Determines if  $n$  is composite.

This function implements Fermat's primality test. The test says that for an integer  $n$ , select an integer  $a$  coprime with  $n$ . If  $a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ , then  $n$  is prime or pseudoprime.

**Parameters** `n` (`int`) – A positive integer.

**Returns** `False` if  $n$  is known to be composite. `True` if  $n$  is prime or pseudoprime.

**Return type** `bool`

## References

- <https://oeis.org/A001262>
- <https://oeis.org/A001567>

## Examples

```
# List of some primes
In [1]: primes = [257, 24841, 65497]

In [2]: for prime in primes:
...:     is_prime = galois.is_prime_fermat(prime)
...:     p, k = galois.prime_factors(prime)
...:     print("Prime = {:5d}, Fermat's Prime Test = {}, Prime factors = {}".format(prime, is_prime, list(p)))
...:
Prime = 257, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [257]
Prime = 24841, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [24841]
Prime = 65497, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [65497]

# List of some strong pseudoprimes with base 2
In [3]: pseudoprimes = [2047, 29341, 65281]

In [4]: for pseudoprime in pseudoprimes:
...:     is_prime = galois.is_prime_fermat(pseudoprime)
...:     p, k = galois.prime_factors(pseudoprime)
...:     print("Pseudoprime = {:5d}, Fermat's Prime Test = {}, Prime factors = {}".format(pseudoprime, is_prime, list(p)))
...:
Pseudoprime = 2047, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [23, 89]
Pseudoprime = 29341, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [13, 37, 61]
Pseudoprime = 65281, Fermat's Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [97, 673]
```

**galois.is\_prime\_miller\_rabin****galois.is\_prime\_miller\_rabin**(*n*, *a=None*, *rounds=1*)Determines if *n* is composite.

This function implements the Miller-Rabin primality test. The test says that for an integer *n*, select an integer *a* such that *a < n*. Factor *n - 1* such that  $2^s d = n - 1$ . Then, *n* is composite, if  $a^d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  and  $a^{2^r d} \not\equiv n - 1 \pmod{n}$  for  $1 \leq r < s$ .

**Parameters**

- ***n* (*int*)** – A positive integer.
- ***a* (*int*, *optional*)** – Initial composite witness value,  $1 \leq a < n$ . On subsequent rounds, *a* will be a different value. The default is a random value.
- ***rounds* (*int*, *optional*)** – The number of iterations attempting to detect *n* as composite. Additional rounds will choose new *a*. Sufficient rounds have arbitrarily-high probability of detecting a composite.

**Returns** `False` if *n* is known to be composite. `True` if *n* is prime or pseudoprime.**Return type** `bool`**References**

- <https://math.dartmouth.edu/~carlp/PDF/paper25.pdf>
- <https://oeis.org/A001262>

---

**Examples**

```
# List of some primes
In [1]: primes = [257, 24841, 65497]

In [2]: for prime in primes:
...:     is_prime = galois.is_prime_miller_rabin(prime)
...:     p, k = galois.prime_factors(prime)
...:     print("Prime = {:5d}, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = {}, Prime factors = {}".format(prime, is_prime, list(p)))
...:
Prime = 257, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [257]
Prime = 24841, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [24841]
Prime = 65497, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [65497]

# List of some strong pseudoprimes with base 2
In [3]: pseudoprimes = [2047, 29341, 65281]

# Single round of Miller-Rabin, sometimes fooled by pseudoprimes
In [4]: for pseudoprime in pseudoprimes:
...:     is_prime = galois.is_prime_miller_rabin(pseudoprime)
...:     p, k = galois.prime_factors(pseudoprime)
...:
...:     print("Pseudoprime = {:5d}, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = {}, Prime factors = {}".format(pseudoprime, is_prime, list(p)))
...:
...:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Pseudoprime = 2047, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = True, Prime factors = [23, 89]
Pseudoprime = 29341, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = False, Prime factors = [13, 37, 61]
Pseudoprime = 65281, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = False, Prime factors = [97, 673]

# 7 rounds of Miller-Rabin, never fooled by pseudoprimes
In [5]: for pseudoprime in pseudoprimes:
...:     is_prime = galois.is_prime_miller_rabin(pseudoprime, rounds=7)
...:     p, k = galois.prime_factors(pseudoprime)
...:
...:     print("Pseudoprime = {:5d}, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = {}, Prime factors = {}".format(pseudoprime, is_prime, list(p)))
...:
Pseudoprime = 2047, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = False, Prime factors = [23, 89]
Pseudoprime = 29341, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = False, Prime factors = [13, 37, 61]
Pseudoprime = 65281, Miller-Rabin Prime Test = False, Prime factors = [97, 673]
```

## Prime factorization

<code>prime_factors(n)</code>	Computes the prime factors of the positive integer $n$ .
<code>is_smooth(n, B)</code>	Determines if the positive integer $n$ is $B$ -smooth, i.e. all its prime factors satisfy $p \leq B$ .

### galois.prime\_factors

#### galois.prime\_factors( $n$ )

Computes the prime factors of the positive integer  $n$ .

The integer  $n$  can be factored into  $n = p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \dots p_{k-1}^{e_{k-1}}$ .

#### Steps:

1. Test if  $n$  is prime. If so, return  $[n], [1]$ .
2. Test if  $n$  is a perfect power, such that  $n = x^k$ . If so, prime factor  $x$  and multiply its exponents by  $k$ .
3. Use trial division with a list of primes up to  $10^6$ . If no residual factors, return the discovered prime factors.
4. Use Pollard's Rho algorithm to find a non-trivial factor of the residual. Continue until all are found.

**Parameters** `n` (`int`) – The positive integer to be factored.

#### Returns

- `list` – Sorted list of  $k$  prime factors  $p = [p_1, p_2, \dots, p_{k-1}]$  with  $p_1 < p_2 < \dots < p_{k-1}$ .
- `list` – List of corresponding prime powers  $e = [e_1, e_2, \dots, e_{k-1}]$ .

### Examples

```
In [1]: p, e = galois.prime_factors(120)
```

```
In [2]: p, e
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# The product of the prime powers is the factored integer
In [3]: np.multiply.reduce(np.array(p) ** np.array(e))
Out[3]: 120
```

Prime factorization of 1 less than a large prime.

## galois.is\_smooth

`galois.is_smooth( $n$ ,  $B$ )`

Determines if the positive integer  $n$  is  $B$ -smooth, i.e. all its prime factors satisfy  $p \leq B$ .

The 2-smooth numbers are the powers of 2. The 5-smooth numbers are known as *regular numbers*. The 7-smooth numbers are known as *humble numbers* or *highly composite numbers*.

## Parameters

- **n** (*int*) – A positive integer.
  - **B** (*int*) – The smoothness bound.

**Returns** True if  $n$  is  $B$ -smooth.

**Return type** bool

## Examples

```
In [1]: galois.is_smooth(2**10, 2)
Out[1]: True

In [2]: galois.is_smooth(10, 5)
Out[2]: True

In [3]: galois.is_smooth(12, 5)
Out[3]: True

In [4]: galois.is_smooth(60**2, 5)
Out[4]: True
```

## 6.2 numpy

Documentation of some native numpy functions when called on Galois field arrays.

### 6.2.1 General

<code>np.copy(a)</code>	Returns a copy of a given Galois field array.
<code>np.concatenate(arrays[, axis])</code>	Concatenates the input arrays along the given axis.
<code>np.insert(array, object, values[, axis])</code>	Inserts values along the given axis.

### 6.2.2 Arithmetic

<code>np.add(x, y)</code>	Adds two Galois field arrays element-wise.
<code>np.subtract(x, y)</code>	Subtracts two Galois field arrays element-wise.
<code>np.multiply(x, y)</code>	Multiplies two Galois field arrays element-wise.
<code>np.divide(x, y)</code>	Divides two Galois field arrays element-wise.
<code>np.negative(x)</code>	Returns the element-wise additive inverse of a Galois field array.
<code>np.reciprocal(x)</code>	Returns the element-wise multiplicative inverse of a Galois field array.
<code>np.power(x, y)</code>	Exponentiates a Galois field array element-wise.
<code>np.square(x)</code>	Squares a Galois field array element-wise.
<code>np.log(x)</code>	Computes the logarithm (base GF. <code>primitive_element</code> ) of a Galois field array element-wise.
<code>np.matmul(a, b)</code>	Returns the matrix multiplication of two Galois field arrays.

### 6.2.3 Advanced Arithmetic

<code>np.convolve(a, b)</code>	Convolves the input arrays.
--------------------------------	-----------------------------

### 6.2.4 Linear Algebra

<code>np.dot(a, b)</code>	Returns the dot product of two Galois field arrays.
<code>np.vdot(a, b)</code>	Returns the dot product of two Galois field vectors.
<code>np.inner(a, b)</code>	Returns the inner product of two Galois field arrays.
<code>np.outer(a, b)</code>	Returns the outer product of two Galois field arrays.
<code>np.matmul(a, b)</code>	Returns the matrix multiplication of two Galois field arrays.
<code>np.linalg.matrix_power(x)</code>	Raises a square Galois field matrix to an integer power.
<code>np.linalg.det(A)</code>	Computes the determinant of the matrix.
<code>np.linalg.matrix_rank(x)</code>	Returns the rank of a Galois field matrix.

continues on next page

Table 34 – continued from previous page

<code>np.trace(x)</code>	Returns the sum along the diagonal of a Galois field array.
<code>np.linalg.solve(x)</code>	Solves the system of linear equations.
<code>np.linalg.inv(A)</code>	Computes the inverse of the matrix.

## RELEASE NOTES

### 7.1 v0.0.17

#### 7.1.1 Breaking Changes

- Rename `FieldMeta` to `FieldClass`.
- Remove `target` keyword from `FieldClass.compile()` until there is better support for GPUs.
- Consolidate `verify_irreducible` and `verify_primitive` keyword arguments into `verify` for the `galois.GF()` class factory function.
- Remove group arrays until there is more complete support.

#### 7.1.2 Changes

- Speed-up Galois field class creation time.
- Speed-up JIT compilation time by caching functions.
- Speed-up `Poly.roots()` by JIT compiling it.
- Add BCH codes with `galois.BCH`.
- Add ability to generate irreducible polynomials with `irreducible_poly()` and `irreducible_polys()`.
- Add ability to generate primitive polynomials with `primitive_poly()` and `primitive_polys()`.
- Add computation of the minimal polynomial of an element of an extension field with `minimal_poly()`.
- Add display of arithmetic tables with `FieldClass.arithmetic_table()`.
- Add display of field element representation table with `FieldClass.repr_table()`.
- Add Berlekamp-Massey algorithm in `berlekamp_massey()`.
- Enable ipython tab-completion of Galois field classes.
- Cleanup API reference page.
- Add introduction to Galois fields tutorials.
- Fix bug in `is_primitive()` where some reducible polynomials were marked irreducible.
- Fix bug in integer<->polynomial conversions for large binary polynomials.
- Fix bug in “power” display mode of 0.
- Other minor bug fixes.

### 7.1.3 Contributors

- Dominik Wernberger (@Werni2A)
- Matt Hostetter (@mhostetter)

## 7.2 v0.0.16

### 7.2.1 Changes

- Add `Field()` alias of `GF()` class factory.
- Add finite groups modulo `n` with `Group()` class factory.
- Add `is_group()`, `is_field()`, `is_prime_field()`, `is_extension_field()`.
- Add polynomial constructor `Poly.String()`.
- Add polynomial factorization in `poly_factors()`.
- Add `np.vdot()` support.
- Fix PyPI packaging issue from v0.0.15.
- Fix bug in creation of 0-degree polynomials.
- Fix bug in `poly_gcd()` not returning monic GCD polynomials.

### 7.2.2 Contributors

- Matt Hostetter (@mhostetter)

## 7.3 v0.0.15

### 7.3.1 Breaking Changes

- Rename `poly_exp_mod()` to `poly_pow()` to mimic the native `pow()` function.
- Rename `fermat_primality_test()` to `is_prime_fermat()`.
- Rename `miller_rabin_primality_test()` to `is_prime_miller_rabin()`.

### 7.3.2 Changes

- Massive linear algebra speed-ups. (See #88)
- Massive polynomial speed-ups. (See #88)
- Various Galois field performance enhancements. (See #92)
- Support `np.convolve()` for two Galois field arrays.
- Allow polynomial arithmetic with Galois field scalars (of the same field). (See #99), e.g.

```
>>> GF = galois.GF(3)

>>> p = galois.Poly([1,2,0], field=GF)
Poly(x^2 + 2x, GF(3))

>>> p * GF(2)
Poly(2x^2 + x, GF(3))
```

- Allow creation of 0-degree polynomials from integers. (See #99), e.g.

```
>>> p = galois.Poly(1)
Poly(1, GF(2))
```

- Add the four Oakley fields from RFC 2409.
- Speed-up unit tests.
- Restructure API reference.

### 7.3.3 Contributors

- Matt Hostetter (@mhostetter)

## 7.4 v0.0.14

### 7.4.1 Breaking Changes

- Rename `GFArray.Eye()` to `GFArray.Identity()`.
- Rename `chinese_remainder_theorem()` to `crt()`.

### 7.4.2 Changes

- Lots of performance improvements.
- Additional linear algebra support.
- Various bug fixes.

### 7.4.3 Contributors

- Baalateja Kataru (@BK-Modding)
- Matt Hostetter (@mhostetter)



---

**CHAPTER  
EIGHT**

---

**INDICES AND TABLES**

- genindex
- modindex
- search



# INDEX

## A

`arithmetic_table()` (*galois.FieldClass* method), 65

## B

`BCH` (*class in galois*), 124

`bch_generator_matrix` (*class in galois*), 130

`bch_generator_poly` (*class in galois*), 129

`bch_valid_codes` (*class in galois*), 129

`berlekamp_massey` (*class in galois*), 123

## C

`carmichael` (*class in galois*), 138

`characteristic` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 70

`coeffs` (*galois.Poly* property), 116

`compile()` (*galois.FieldClass* method), 66

`conway_poly()` (*in module galois*), 98

`crt` (*class in galois*), 133

## D

`decode()` (*galois.BCH* method), 125

`default_ufunc_mode` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 70

`degree` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 71

`degree` (*galois.Poly* property), 116

`degrees` (*galois.Poly* property), 116

`Degrees()` (*galois.Poly* class method), 109

`derivative()` (*galois.Poly* method), 113

`display()` (*galois.FieldClass* method), 66

`display_mode` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 71

`dtypes` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 72

## E

`Elements()` (*galois.FieldArray* class method), 59

`Elements()` (*galois.GF2* class method), 81

`encode()` (*galois.BCH* method), 127

`euler_totient` (*class in galois*), 139

## F

`Field` (*class in galois*), 55

`field` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

`field` (*galois.Poly* property), 117

`FieldArray` (*class in galois*), 56

`FieldClass` (*class in galois*), 64

## G

`G` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

`gcd` (*class in galois*), 132

`generator_poly` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

`GF` (*class in galois*), 53

`GF2` (*class in galois*), 80

## H

`H` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

## I

`Identity()` (*galois.FieldArray* class method), 60

`Identity()` (*galois.GF2* class method), 82

`Identity()` (*galois.Poly* class method), 109

`ilog` (*class in galois*), 135

`integer` (*galois.Poly* property), 117

`Integer()` (*galois.Poly* class method), 110

`irroot` (*class in galois*), 134

`irreducible_poly` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 73

`irreducible_poly()` (*in module galois*), 93

`irreducible_polys()` (*in module galois*), 94

`is_cyclic` (*class in galois*), 136

`is_extension_field` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 74

`is_irreducible()` (*in module galois*), 95

`is_monic()` (*in module galois*), 122

`is_narrow_sense` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

`is_prime()` (*in module galois*), 146

`is_prime_fermat()` (*in module galois*), 147

`is_prime_field` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 74

`is_prime_miller_rabin()` (*in module galois*), 148

`is_primitive` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

`is_primitive()` (*in module galois*), 98

`is_primitive_element()` (*in module galois*), 102

`is_primitive_poly` (*galois.FieldClass* property), 74

`is_primitive_root()` (*in module galois*), 92

`is_smooth()` (*in module galois*), 150

`isqrt` (*class in galois*), 134

## K

`k` (*galois.BCH* property), 128

kth\_prime() (*in module galois*), 142

## L

lcm (*class in galois*), 132

log\_naive (*class in galois*), 141

## M

mersenne\_exponents() (*in module galois*), 144

mersenne\_primes() (*in module galois*), 145

minimal\_poly() (*in module galois*), 103

## N

n (*galois.BCH property*), 128

name (*galois.FieldClass property*), 75

next\_prime() (*in module galois*), 143

nonzero\_coeffs (*galois.Poly property*), 118

nonzero\_degrees (*galois.Poly property*), 118

## O

Oakley1 (*class in galois*), 104

Oakley2 (*class in galois*), 105

Oakley3 (*class in galois*), 105

Oakley4 (*class in galois*), 106

One() (*galois.Poly class method*), 110

Ones() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 60

Ones() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 82

order (*galois.FieldClass property*), 76

## P

Poly (*class in galois*), 106

poly\_factors() (*in module galois*), 120

poly\_gcd() (*in module galois*), 119

poly\_pow() (*in module galois*), 120

pow (*class in galois*), 135

prev\_prime() (*in module galois*), 143

prime\_factors() (*in module galois*), 149

prime\_subfield (*galois.FieldClass property*), 76

primes() (*in module galois*), 142

primitive\_element (*galois.FieldClass property*), 77

primitive\_element() (*in module galois*), 99

primitive\_elements (*galois.FieldClass property*), 77

primitive\_elements() (*in module galois*), 100

primitive\_poly() (*in module galois*), 96

primitive\_polys() (*in module galois*), 97

primitive\_root() (*in module galois*), 86

primitive\_roots() (*in module galois*), 89

properties (*galois.FieldClass property*), 78

## R

Random() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 60

Random() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 83

Random() (*galois.Poly class method*), 111

random\_prime() (*in module galois*), 144

Range() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 61

Range() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 83

repr\_table() (*galois.FieldClass method*), 68

roots (*galois.BCH property*), 128

Roots() (*galois.Poly class method*), 111

roots() (*galois.Poly method*), 114

## S

string (*galois.Poly property*), 118

String() (*galois.Poly class method*), 112

systematic (*galois.BCH property*), 129

## T

t (*galois.BCH property*), 129

totatives (*class in galois*), 140

## U

ufunc\_mode (*galois.FieldClass property*), 78

ufunc\_modes (*galois.FieldClass property*), 79

## V

Vandermonde() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 61

Vandermonde() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 84

Vector() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 62

Vector() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 84

## Z

Zero() (*galois.Poly class method*), 112

Zeros() (*galois.FieldArray class method*), 63

Zeros() (*galois.GF2 class method*), 85